

**SONY®**

**Draft**

# User guide

Product name variable is  
missing in the XML [COVER

# Contents

Xperia™ V User guide.....	6
Getting started.....	8
What is Android™?.....	8
Overview.....	8
Assembly.....	9
Turning the device on and off .....	12
Screen lock.....	13
Setup guide.....	13
Accounts and services.....	14
Getting to know your phone.....	16
Using the keys.....	16
Battery.....	16
Using the touchscreen.....	21
Using the lockscreen.....	25
Home screen.....	26
Accessing and using applications.....	30
Status and notifications.....	36
Phone settings menu.....	39
Typing text.....	39
Customising your device.....	48
Enhancing the sound output.....	53
Memory.....	54
Using a headset .....	55
Internet and messaging settings.....	56
Controlling data usage.....	58
Mobile network settings.....	59
Google Play™.....	62
Getting started with Google Play™.....	62
Downloading from Google Play™.....	62
Clearing your application data.....	63
Permissions.....	64
Installing applications not from Google Play™ .....	65
Calling.....	66
Emergency calls.....	66
Making and receiving calls.....	66
Rejecting calls.....	69
Recent calls.....	70
Voicemail.....	71
Multiple calls.....	72

Setting up a conference call.....	73
Call settings.....	74
<b>Contacts .....</b>	<b>77</b>
Getting contacts into your device.....	77
Adding and editing contacts.....	80
Searching and viewing contacts.....	82
Favourites and groups.....	84
Sending contact information.....	85
Backing up contacts.....	86
<b>Messaging.....</b>	<b>88</b>
Using text and multimedia messaging.....	88
Text and multimedia message options.....	91
Google Talk™ .....	92
<b>Email.....</b>	<b>94</b>
Getting started with Email.....	94
Using email.....	96
<b>"WALKMAN" application .....</b>	<b>102</b>
About Music.....	102
Transferring media files to your device .....	103
Using the "WALKMAN" application .....	103
Getting more information about a track or artist.....	106
Using My music to organise your tracks .....	107
Managing playlists.....	109
"WALKMAN" application widget .....	111
Protecting your hearing.....	111
TrackID technology.....	112
<b>FM radio.....</b>	<b>116</b>
About the FM radio.....	116
Using your favourite radio channels.....	118
Sound settings.....	119
Identifying radio tracks using TrackID™.....	120
<b>Camera.....</b>	<b>121</b>
About the camera.....	121
Using the still camera.....	122
Face detection.....	124
Using Smile Shutter™ to capture smiling faces.....	125
Adding the geographical position to your photos.....	125
Using still camera settings.....	126
Using the video camera.....	133
<b>Album.....</b>	<b>141</b>
About Album.....	141
Viewing photos and videos in the Pictures tab .....	142

Viewing photos and videos in the My albums tab .....	143
Viewing your photos on a map.....	152
Viewing online albums.....	155
<b>Movies.....</b>	<b>157</b>
About Movies.....	157
Using Movies.....	158
<b>Video Unlimited.....</b>	<b>161</b>
About Video Unlimited.....	161
Renting or buying a video.....	163
Watching a video from Video Unlimited.....	165
<b>Web browser.....</b>	<b>167</b>
About the web browser.....	167
<b>Connectivity.....</b>	<b>168</b>
Connecting to wireless networks.....	168
Sharing content with DLNA Certified™ devices.....	174
NFC.....	179
Bluetooth™ wireless technology.....	183
Connecting your device to a computer.....	186
Scanning barcodes with the NeoReader™ application.....	191
Smart Connect.....	194
<b>Synchronising data on your phone.....</b>	<b>196</b>
About synchronising data on your device.....	196
Synchronising with Google™.....	196
Synchronising your corporate email, calendar and contacts.....	197
Synchronising with Facebook™.....	198
<b>Maps and locations.....</b>	<b>200</b>
About location services.....	200
Using GPS.....	200
Google Maps™.....	201
Using Google Maps™ to get directions.....	202
<b>Calendar and alarm clock.....</b>	<b>203</b>
Calendar.....	203
Alarm clock.....	204
<b>Support and maintenance.....</b>	<b>209</b>
Updating your device.....	209
Backing up and restoring phone content.....	211
Resetting your device.....	212
Locking and protecting your device.....	212
Support application.....	218
Recycling your phone.....	218

Reference.....	219
Settings overview.....	219
Status and notification icons overview.....	220
Application overview.....	226
Important information.....	231
Important information leaflet.....	231
Limitations to services and features.....	231
Legal information.....	231
Index.....	233

# Xperia™ V User guide

**ID: SCR-SONY-12NU-HTML-UG-FRONT**

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-E6E8CB91-86CA-4D8B-962F-F345E3A3EC1C
<i>Title</i>	User guide - Front page
<i>Changes</i>	Front page for XPERIA Care HTML UG
<i>Version</i>	1
<i>Author</i>	AnnE
<i>Status</i>	Released

# Getting started

GUID	GUID-939577FB-1BE0-4C23-9106-0910EFDEC761
Title	Getting started - heading only
Changes	From Robyn RTL. Valid for eDream 3.0 - Home screen label changed.
Version	2
Author	Komall
Status	Released

## What is Android™?

Indexterm: "Android™"

Your Xperia smartphone from Sony runs on the Android platform. Android phones can perform many of the same functions as a computer and you can customise them to your own needs. For example, you can add and delete applications, or enhance existing applications to improve functionality. On Google Play™ you can download a range of applications and games from a constantly growing collection. You can also integrate applications on your Android™ phone with other applications and with online services that you use. For example, you can back up your phone contacts, access your different email accounts and calendars from one place, keep track of your appointments, and engage in social networking.

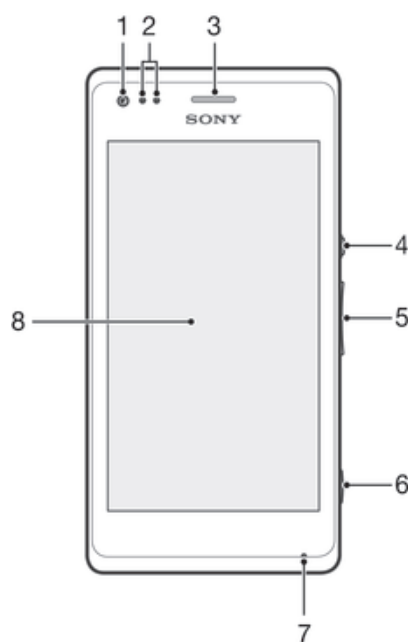
Android™ phones are constantly evolving. When a new software version is available and your phone supports this new software, you can update your phone to get new features and the latest improvements.

💡 Your Android™ phone is pre-loaded with Google™ services. To get the most out of the provided Google™ services, you should have a Google™ account and sign in to it when you first start your phone. You also need to have Internet access to use many of the features in Android™.

! New software releases may not be compatible with all phones.

GUID	GUID-F3EE4549-8847-4A4D-AA20-28FBC7647298
Title	What is Android?
Changes	
Version	1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released

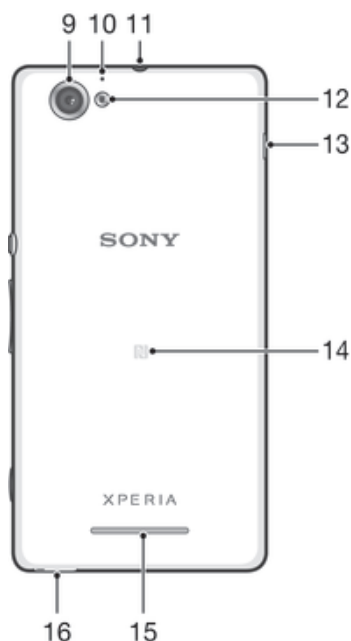
## Overview





**ID: ILL-SONY-13NY-FRONT-OVERVIEW**

- 1 Front camera lens
- 2 Proximity/Light sensor
- 3 Ear speaker
- 4 Power key
- 5 Volume/Zoom key
- 6 Camera key
- 7 Microphone 1
- 8 Touchscreen



**ID: ILL-SONY-13NY-BACK-OVERVIEW**

- 9 Main camera lens
- 10 Microphone 2
- 11 Headset jack
- 12 Camera light
- 13 Port for charger/USB cable
- 14 NFC™ detection area
- 15 Speaker
- 16 Strap hole

GUID	GUID-5CE66CCE-D5DA-422E-9290-40E257A0082E
Title	Phone overview - Nicki
Changes	Only for Nicki html guide - adjust the topic structure; no content change
Version	1.1.1
Author	WangT
Status	Draft

**Assembly**

GUID	GUID-A00623F6-271A-44C6-BACC-F441DAA2AB8C
Title	Assembly - heading
Changes	Generic
Version	1

Author	CarlosG
Status	Released

### To remove the back cover

Indexterm: "back cover"  
Sub-indexterm: "removing"

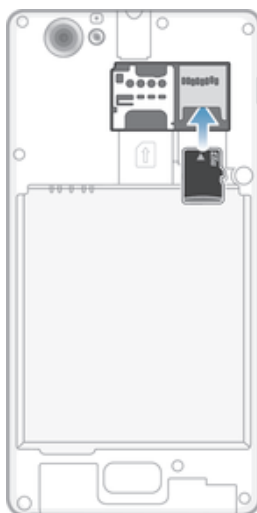


#### ID: ILL-SONY-13NY-REMOVING-BACK-COVER

- Insert a thumbnail into the gap between the back cover and one side of your device, then lift up the cover.

GUID	GUID-512F5C21-6B2C-44AA-B2C3-E1B9C6CB9BBB
Title	To remove the back cover
Changes	Term change from "phone" to "device"
Version	4
Author	WangT
Status	Released*

### To insert the memory card



#### ID: ILL-SONY-13NY-INSERTSD-SS

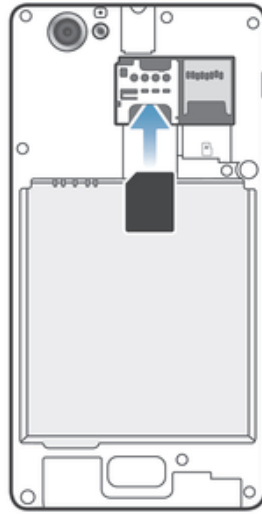
- 1 Remove the back cover.
  - 2 Insert the memory card into the memory card slot, with the gold-coloured contacts facing down.
- ! The memory card may not be included at purchase in all markets.

GUID	GUID-481057C3-65CD-4FFD-B582-46EA6F8AA9B0
Title	To insert the memory card
Changes	Update for Nicki - add condition on the illus to differentiate SS and DS
Version	7.1.1

Author	WangT
Status	Released

### To insert the micro SIM card

Indexterm: "micro SIM card"  
 Sub-indexterm: "inserting"



#### ID: ILL-SONY-13NY-INSERT-SIM-SS

- Remove the battery cover, then insert the micro SIM card into its slot with the gold-coloured contacts facing down.
- ! You must use a micro SIM card for your phone to work correctly. Some standard-sized SIM cards allow you to detach an integrated micro SIM card. Once you detach the micro SIM card from the standard-sized SIM card, you cannot reattach it and use the standard-sized SIM card again. If you do not have a micro SIM card, or if your current SIM card does not contain a detachable micro SIM card, contact your network operator for information on how to collect or exchange your SIM card.

GUID	GUID-E44925B5-53C5-401B-A805-846F0EB0D296
Title	To insert the SIM card
Changes	
Version	1
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released*

### To attach the back cover

Indexterm: "back cover"  
 Sub-indexterm: "attaching"



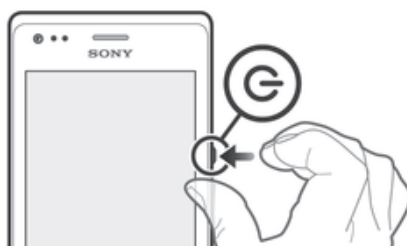
**ID: ILL-SONY-13NY-ATTACHING-BACK-COVER**



- 1 Place the back cover over the back of the device from the bottom side.
- 2 Moving from bottom to top, press down the sides of the cover until you hear clicking noises as they lock into place.

GUID	GUID-F642FE56-9AA2-4E63-8B4F-8172A84F30F2
Title	To attach the back cover
Changes	The direction to attach the back cover changed - first attach at the bottom and then press down from bottom to top - like Nicki
Version	5
Author	WangT
Status	Draft

**Turning the device on and off**


Indexterm: "powering on"	
Indexterm: "powering off"	
Indexterm: "turning on"	
Indexterm: "turning off"	
GUID	GUID-F3910263-29C3-4AC1-974D-7A25AA32A88F
Title	Turning on or off the device - heading only
Changes	device term change
Version	7
Author	QianWang
Status	Released

**To turn on the device****ID: ILL-SONY-13NY-ON**

- 1 Press and hold down the power key  **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-AND-POWER-K90** until the device vibrates.
  - 2 If your screen goes dark, briefly press the power key  **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-AND-POWER-K90** to activate the screen.
  - 3 To unlock the screen, swipe up or down on the screen.
  - 4 Enter your SIM card PIN when requested, then select **OK** [sim\_enter\_ok].
  - 5 Wait a while for the device to start.
- 💡 Your SIM card PIN is initially supplied by your network operator, but you can change it later from the **Settings** [settings\_label] menu. To correct a mistake made while entering your SIM card PIN, tap **✕** **ID: ICN-SONY-DELETE-PHONE-NUMBER-BLK**.

GUID	GUID-69945514-1C19-44BC-A4B6-16499F44D9BB
Title	To turn on the device
Changes	For Togari; text changed; only change "drag" to "swipe" in step3.
Version	18
Author	Tan Nellie
Status	Draft

**To turn off the device**

- 1 Press and hold down the power key  **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-AND-POWER-K90** until the options menu opens.
  - 2 In the options menu, tap **Power off** [global\_action\_power\_off].
  - 3 Tap **OK** [button\_ok].
- ! It may take a while for the device to shut down.

GUID	GUID-18CE50BE-7FF2-40F4-B93F-8CBB76E4AF3C
------	---

<i>Title</i>	To turn off the device
<i>Changes</i>	changed a label id only no need ed review
<i>Version</i>	7
<i>Author</i>	MikeCao
<i>Status</i>	Released

## Screen lock

Indexterm: "locks"  
 Sub-indexterm: "locking the screen"  
 Sub-indexterm: "activating the screen"  
 Sub-indexterm: "screen lock"

When your phone is on and left idle for a set period of time, the screen darkens to save battery power, and locks automatically. This lock prevents unwanted actions on the touch screen when you are not using it.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-257D8ADA-2FAB-46AB-AC65-0351FE70EC94
<i>Title</i>	Screen lock
<i>Changes</i>	Valid from 2.1. Valid for eDream 3.0.
<i>Version</i>	3
<i>Author</i>	HannaB
<i>Status</i>	Released*

### To activate the screen

- Briefly press the power key  **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-AND-POWER-K90**.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-0C3A14A1-C558-4C86-B6E1-45351B7F553D
<i>Title</i>	To activate the screen
<i>Changes</i>	From eDream6.0: updated based on editorial comments.
<i>Version</i>	7
<i>Author</i>	VikkiL
<i>Status</i>	Released*

### To unlock the screen



**ID: ILL-SONY-EDREAM-SCREEN-LOCK**

- Drag  **ID: ICN-SONY-EDREAM3-ANDROID-LOCK-UP** up or drag  **ID: ICN-SONY-EDREAM3-ANDROID-LOCK-DOWN** down.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-5F698464-1BEC-40EC-976F-FED186599B31
<i>Title</i>	To unlock the screen
<i>Changes</i>	Valid from Odin and Yuga (chagned the way to unlock the screen)
<i>Version</i>	5
<i>Author</i>	PengLeon
<i>Status</i>	Released*

### To lock the screen manually

- When the screen is active, briefly press the power key  **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-AND-POWER-K90**.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-229DFA2D-0E19-4782-B952-ACEBB0E8C755
<i>Title</i>	To lock the screen manually
<i>Changes</i>	From eDream6.0: updated as per editor's comments
<i>Version</i>	5
<i>Author</i>	VikkiL
<i>Status</i>	Released

## Setup guide


Indexterm: "setup guide"

The first time you start your device, a setup guide opens to explain basic functions and help you enter essential settings. This is a good time to configure the device to your specific needs. You can also access the setup guide later from the settings menu.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-C9CE16A0-5953-4C4B-B27D-E546F04377B5
<i>Title</i>	Setup guide
<i>Changes</i>	For JellyBean. Changed "the application screen" to "the settings menu". No other text update.

Version	12
Author	QianWang
Status	Released

### To access the setup guide manually

- 1 From the Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Tap Settings [settings\_label] > Setup guide [setupguide\_settings\_title] .

GUID	GUID-45BAC9AF-99A4-4D6C-979B-E6E88255911E
Title	To access the setup guide manually
Changes	For Jelly Bean projects. Steps changed.
Version	7
Author	QianWang
Status	Released

## Accounts and services

Indexterm: "accounts"  
Indexterm: "services"

Sign in to your online service accounts from your device to get easy access when you're on the move. For example, you can integrate contacts from your Google™ account into your Contacts, so you have everything in one place. You can sign up to new online services from your device as well as from a computer.

GUID	GUID-59021D9A-ABD0-412C-A582-5DA4E43841EE
Title	Services
Changes	change phonebook to Contacts
Version	4
Author	LuLinda
Status	Released

## Google™ account

Indexterm: "accounts"  
Sub-indexterm: "Google™"

Having a Google™ account is key to using a range of applications and services with your Android device. You need a Google™ account, for example, to use the Gmail™ [GOOGLE-GMAIL-PLAIN] application in your device, to chat with friends using Google Talk™, and to synchronise the calendar application on your device with your Google Calendar™. You also need a Google™ account to download applications and games, music, movies and books from Google Play™.

GUID	GUID-887CAF1C-9BBE-477E-B164-01220815B2AC
Title	Google account
Changes	Update for Term change from phone to device
Version	5
Author	PanL
Status	Released

## Microsoft® Exchange ActiveSync® account

Indexterm: "accounts"  
Sub-indexterm: "Exchange Active Sync®"

Synchronise your device with your corporate Microsoft® Exchange ActiveSync® account. This way, you keep your work email, contacts and calendar events with you at all times.

GUID	GUID-80919EF6-5273-4790-AEF0-EE09B4D8CD50
Title	Exchange Active Sync account
Changes	Update for Term change from phone to device
Version	5
Author	PanL
Status	Released

## Facebook™ account

Indexterm: "accounts"  
Sub-indexterm: "Facebook™"

Facebook™ is a social networking service that connects you with friends, family and colleagues around the world. Set up Facebook to work on your device so that you can stay in touch from anywhere.

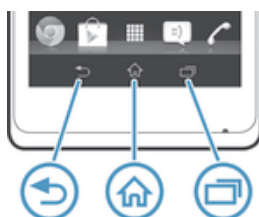
<i>GUID</i>	GUID-63DB6971-BA62-4881-96C7-583E78F463F2
<i>Title</i>	Facebook account
<i>Changes</i>	Update for Term change from phone to device
<i>Version</i>	3
<i>Author</i>	PanL
<i>Status</i>	Released

# Getting to know your phone

GUID	GUID-AA4FF55E-CC16-4F0C-8A77-A735D267BF46
Title	Getting to know your phone - heading only
Changes	Generic
Version	1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released*

## Using the keys

Indexterm: "keys"



### ID: ILL-SONY-13NY-HARDWARE-KEYS

↶ ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
KEY-  
AND-  
BACK

- Back**
- Go back to the previous screen
  - Close the on-screen keypad, a dialog box, an options menu, or the Notification panel

🏠 ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
KEY-  
AND-  
HOM  
E

- Home**
- Go to the **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt]

📄 ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
KEY-  
OPEN  
|  
RECE  
NT-  
APPS

- Task**
- Tap to open a window showing your most recently used applications and a small apps bar

GUID	GUID-CA3D8D48-DDF0-40EB-8E9F-26C4BFB4D6DD
Title	Using the hardware keys - Three keys
Changes	Key update for Mint/Hayabusa
Version	5
Author	Aiping
Status	Released*


## Battery

GUID	GUID-08267A67-94DC-4C15-8A25-EAD0CE6D540A
Title	Battery
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	2
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released



## Charging the battery

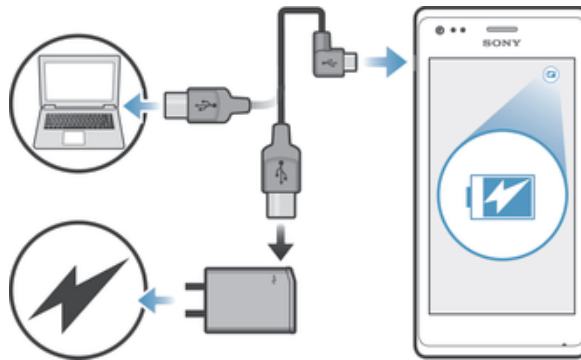
Indexterm: "charging"  
Indexterm: "battery"

Your battery is partly charged when you buy the device. It may take a few minutes before the battery icon  ID: ICN-SONY-STAT-SYS-BATTERY-CHARGE-ANIM3 appears on the screen when you connect the charger cable to a power source, such as a USB port or a charger. You can still use your device while it is charging. Charging your device over a long period of time, for example, overnight, does not damage the battery or the device.

- ! The battery will start to discharge a little after it is fully charged and then charges again after a certain time when the charger is connected. This is to extend battery life and may result in the charge status showing a level below 100 percent.

GUID	GUID-391714A7-52F8-4D33-A3C0-4BB20F347FBF
Title	Charging the battery
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	11
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released

### To charge your device



ID: ILL-SONY-13NY-CHARGING

- 1 Plug the charger into a power outlet.
  - 2 Plug one end of the USB cable into the charger (or into the USB port of a computer).
  - 3 Plug the other end of the cable into the micro USB port on your device, with the USB symbol facing up. The notification light lights up when charging starts.
  - 4 When the notification light is green, the device is fully charged. Disconnect the USB cable from your device by pulling it straight outwards. Make sure not to bend the connector when removing the cable from the device.
- 💡 If the battery is completely discharged, it may take a few minutes before the notification light lights up after you connect the charger cable to a power source.

GUID	GUID-AB7653A6-94E4-487D-8E13-755BAC8DC744
Title	To charge your device
Changes	for Pollux html UG; remove 2 images
Version	11.1.1
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released


### Battery notification light status

Green	The battery is fully charged
Flashing red	The battery level is low
Orange	The battery is charging. The battery level is between low and full

GUID	GUID-15D5D981-229B-451C-9F58-DEAE6FC82CDD
Title	Battery LED status
Changes	for Pollux; change "Battery LED" to "Notification light"
Version	3

Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released

### To check the battery level

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL .
- 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label\_launcher] > About phone [about\_settings-product="default">] > Status [device\_status] > Battery level [battery\_level\_title] .

GUID	GUID-1769B484-1C7F-4F81-B850-45A7984995AB
Title	To check the battery level
Changes	For ICS update: changed the label for "About phone"
Version	4
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released*

### Improving battery performance


Indexterm: "device"  
Sub-indexterm: "battery"  
Sub-indexterm: "performance"

The following tips can help you improve battery performance:

- Charge your device often. This will not affect the lifetime of the battery.
- Downloading data from the Internet is power consuming. When you're not using the Internet, you can save power by disabling all mobile data connections from the expanded status bar. This setting does not prevent your device from transmitting data over other wireless networks.
- Turn off Bluetooth™ and Wi-Fi® when you don't need these features. You can turn them on and off more easily from the expanded status bar.
- Use the **STAMINA mode** [extended\_standby\_mode\_label] and **Low battery mode** [power\_save\_mode\_label] features to reduce battery consumption. You can select the power saving mode that best suits the way you use your device. You can also customise the settings of each power saving mode.
- Set your synchronisation applications (used to synchronise your email, calendar and contacts) to synchronise manually. You can also synchronise automatically, but increase the synchronisation intervals.
- Check the battery usage menu in your device to see which applications use the most power. Your battery consumes more power when you use video and music streaming applications, such as YouTube™. Some applications downloaded from Google Play™ may also consume more power.
- Close and exit applications that you are not using.
- Lower the screen display brightness level.
- Turn off your device or activate the **Airplane mode** [airplane\_mode] setting if you are in an area with no network coverage. Otherwise, your device repeatedly scans for available networks, and this consumes power.
- Use a Sony original handsfree device to listen to music. Handsfree devices demand less battery power than your device's own loudspeakers.
- Keep your device in standby mode whenever possible. Standby time refers to the time during which your device is connected to the network and is not being used.
- Disable any live wallpaper.

GUID	GUID-F9A76820-0B4C-41EA-A31F-152FE937C886
Title	Improving battery performance
Changes	From Togari; text changed; change the way of controlling Bluetooth™ and Wi-Fi®.
Version	22.1.1.1.2
Author	Tan Nellie
Status	Draft

### To access the battery usage menu

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL .
- 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label\_launcher] > Power management [power\_settings\_title] > Battery usage [battery\_label] .

GUID	GUID-72DC8FCB-A113-4E57-88FB-5C55DCE9CFE3
Title	To access the battery usage menu with eco mode

Changes	for Odin & Yuga; update a label only
Version	2
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released

## Using STAMINA mode

Activate the **STAMINA mode** [\[extended\\_standby\\_mode\\_label\]](#) feature to pause your Wi-Fi® [\[udoc\\_no\\_trans\\_wifi\\_wlan\\_plain\]](#) connection, data traffic and several power consuming applications when your screen is inactive. When STAMINA mode is active, you can still receive phone calls, and text and multimedia messages. You can also set up an applications list to allow some applications to keep running when your screen is inactive. Once the screen becomes active again, all paused functions are resumed.

GUID	GUID-BAD9774F-09BB-4637-AE5C-C88606ADFD46
Title	Using the STAMINA mode feature
Changes	for Odin & Yuga; new feature
Version	1
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released*

### To activate STAMINA mode

- 1 From your Home screen [\[homescreen\\_strings\\_application\\_name\\_txt\]](#), tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap **Settings** [\[settings\\_label\\_launcher\]](#) > **Power management** [\[power\\_settings\\_title\]](#).
- 3 Tap **ID: ICN-SONY-LAGAN-SWITCH-OFF** next to **STAMINA mode** [\[extended\\_standby\\_mode\\_label\]](#), then tap **Activate** [\[activate\\_txt\]](#).

GUID	GUID-18315E99-CD26-4905-ADE0-B8514A1912E8
Title	To activate STAMINA mode
Changes	for Odin & Yuga
Version	1
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released

### To deactivate STAMINA mode

- 1 From your Home screen [\[homescreen\\_strings\\_application\\_name\\_txt\]](#), tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap **Settings** [\[settings\\_label\\_launcher\]](#) > **Power management** [\[power\\_settings\\_title\]](#).
- 3 Tap **ID: ICN-SONY-LAGAN-SWITCH-ON** next to **STAMINA mode** [\[extended\\_standby\\_mode\\_label\]](#).

GUID	GUID-4A739D0C-9062-4D68-ADD9-75E89178E876
Title	To deactivate the STAMINA mode
Changes	for Odin & Yuga
Version	1
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released

### To change the settings for STAMINA mode

Indexterm: "STAMINA mode"  
Sub-indexterm: "changing settings"

- 1 From your Home screen [\[homescreen\\_strings\\_application\\_name\\_txt\]](#), tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap **Settings** [\[settings\\_label\\_launcher\]](#) > **Power management** [\[power\\_settings\\_title\]](#).
- 3 To open the settings menu, tap **STAMINA mode** [\[extended\\_standby\\_mode\\_label\]](#).
- 4 Add or remove applications, as desired.
- 5 When you're finished, tap **Done** [\[button\\_done\]](#).

GUID	GUID-04D506B4-63EE-426D-8D1B-BD8C18C3DDB0
Title	To change the settings for STAMINA mode
Changes	for Odin & Yuga
Version	1
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released

## Estimating the standby time of your device


Indexterm: "standby time"  
Sub-indexterm: "estimating"

Standby time refers to the amount of time the battery can last when your device is connected to the network but is not in active use, for example, to receive or make phone calls. STAMINA mode, when activated, continuously evaluates the remaining standby time, which can vary depending on how you use your device. STAMINA mode is more effective in lengthening the standby time if you keep the screen of your device locked. If you rarely lock the screen, you may not see much improvement in battery performance.

- ! When you use your device for the first time, the estimated standby time may not be accurate since there is no previous usage history to estimate from.

GUID	GUID-F75634BA-0777-4510-B021-E7A5AF6EAB76
Title	Viewing the estimated standby time
Changes	From Lotus & Nypon JB update; add this info due to CS request.
Version	1
Author	Tan Nellie
Status	Released*

### To view the estimated standby time

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label\_launcher] > Power management [power\_settings\_title].



GUID	GUID-AEFF9658-539B-41D1-83FF-9BA660166F47
Title	To view the standby time
Changes	From Lotus & Nypon JB update
Version	1
Author	Tan Nellie
Status	Released

## Using Low battery mode

You can activate the Low battery mode [power\_save\_mode\_label] feature to save power when the battery level is low. This feature helps you to adjust the settings for screen brightness, data traffic and the vibrate function so that you can reduce battery consumption.



GUID	GUID-9276E04F-3CB5-4764-BA73-5B99161CBEBD
Title	Using Low battery mode
Changes	From Togari; text changed; only change the description in the 1st sentence.
Version	2
Author	Tan Nellie
Status	Draft

### To activate Low battery mode

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label\_launcher] > Power management [power\_settings\_title].
- 3 Tap  ID: ICN-SONY-LAGAN-SWITCH-OFF next to Low battery mode [power\_save\_mode\_label], then tap Activate [activate\_txt].



GUID	GUID-E2DBA1A1-C68E-471F-982B-14BCBB074753
Title	To activate Low battery mode
Changes	for Odin & Yuga
Version	1
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released

## To deactivate Low battery mode

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label\_launcher] > Power management [power\_settings\_title].
- 3 Tap  ID: ICN-SONY-LAGAN-SWITCH-ON next to Low battery mode [power\_save\_mode\_label].

GUID	GUID-E22485F8-EBCA-44F5-93F5-F9C449CC7A23
Title	To deactivate the Low battery mode
Changes	for Odin & Yuga
Version	1
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released

## To change the settings for Low battery mode

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label\_launcher] > Power management [power\_settings\_title].
- 3 To open the settings menu, tap Low battery mode [power\_save\_mode\_label].
- 4 Adjust the settings as desired.
- 5 When you're finished, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-AND-BACK.

GUID	GUID-DC6395BB-6010-4667-9E56-6E99F8E0DACC
Title	To change the settings for Low battery mode
Changes	for Odin & Yuga
Version	1
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released

## Using the touchscreen

Indexterm: "screen"  
 Sub-indexterm: "glass"  
 Sub-indexterm: "cracked"  
 Sub-indexterm: "warranty"  
 Indexterm: "protective plastic sheet"

A protective plastic sheet is attached to the screen of your phone when you buy it. You should peel off this sheet before using the touchscreen. Otherwise, the touchscreen might not function properly.

When your phone is on and left idle for a set period of time, the screen darkens to save battery power, and locks automatically. This lock prevents unwanted actions on the touchscreen when you are not using it. You can also set personal locks to protect your subscription and make sure only you can access your phone content.

- ! Your phone screen is made from glass. Do not touch the screen if the glass is cracked or shattered. Avoid trying to repair a damaged screen yourself. Glass screens are sensitive to drops and mechanical shocks. Cases of negligent care are not covered by the Sony warranty service.

GUID	GUID-D59D1053-4072-417B-BFE8-E3918A3A263F
Title	Using the touch screen
Changes	From Nozomi and Aoba: added Sony brand condition
Version	8
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released*

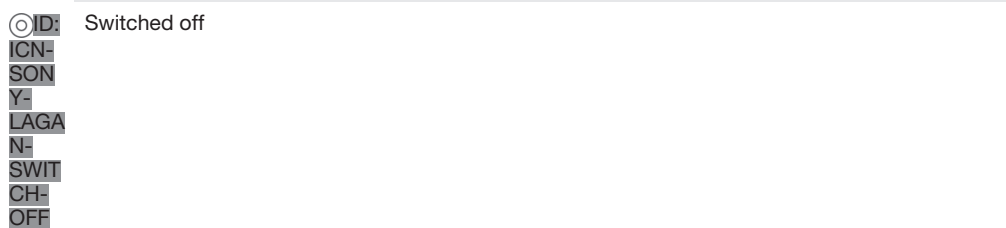
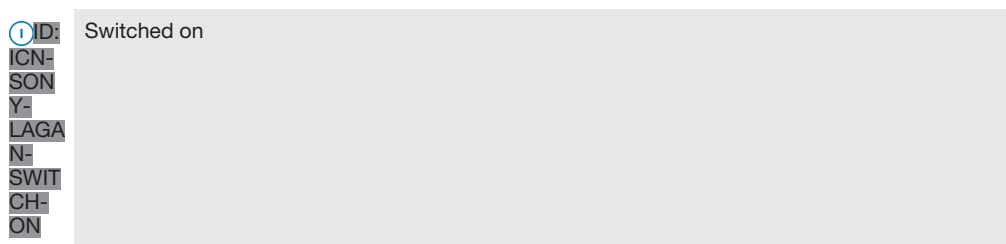
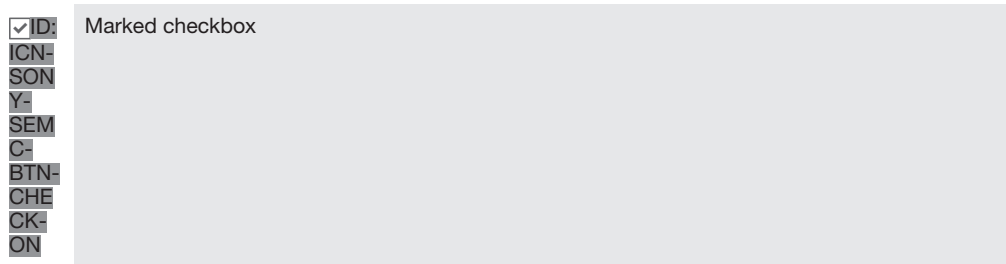
## To open or highlight an item

- Tap the item.

GUID	GUID-4B6D2343-E130-4C7B-8ED3-DC492017558B
Title	To open or highlight an item
Changes	esheep - Rachael. Valid for eDream 3.0.
Version	1
Author	CarlosG
Status	Released

## Marking options

Indexterm: "marking options"



GUID	GUID-05D9C0FB-AA3E-412D-98C4-9A9546F74EE9
Title	Marking options
Changes	
Version	1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released

### To mark or unmark options

- Tap the relevant checkbox or the switch beside the option name.



GUID	GUID-A9C9B443-B48A-4567-9DC1-3C16D7F1316C
Title	To mark or unmark options
Changes	For Tsubasa html User guide. Moved table to a separate reference topic to adjust bad table output.
Version	8.1.1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released

### Zooming

The zoom options available depend on the application you are using.

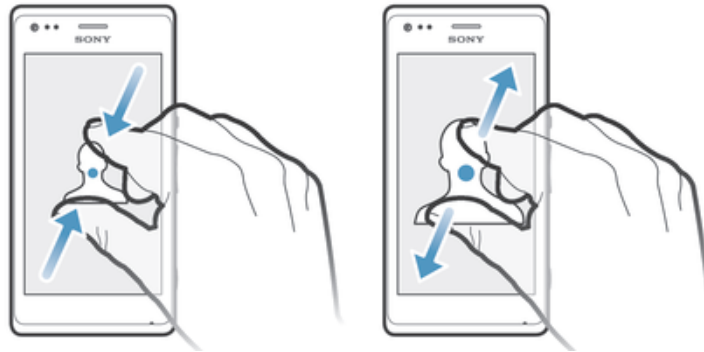
GUID	GUID-D1209E7D-44CB-4C13-A974-59E329DA156B
Title	Zooming
Changes	From eDream6.0: updated as per editorial comments
Version	3
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released

### To zoom

- When available, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-BTN-ZOOM-UP-NORMAL or  ID: ICN-SONY-BTN-ZOOM-DOWN-NORMAL to zoom in or out.
- ! You may have to drag the screen (in any direction) to make the zoom icons appear.

GUID	GUID-A9D127B5-9544-4829-A1DD-FBF2FE84EAA0
Title	To zoom
Changes	esheep - Rachael
Version	1
Author	CarlosG
Status	Released*

### To zoom with two fingers



### ID: ILL-SONY-13NY-PINCH

- Place two fingers on the screen at once and pinch them together (to zoom out) or spread them apart (to zoom in).
- 💡 Use the zoom function when viewing photos and maps, or when browsing the web.

GUID	GUID-AF988EC9-7FA1-48DD-917B-95A95C0F86CE
Title	To zoom with two fingers
Changes	From eD4.0: added the condition to remove the note for startup guide
Version	3
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released*

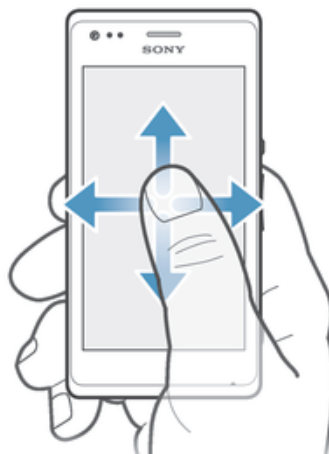
## Scrolling

Scroll by moving your finger up or down on the screen. On some web pages you can also scroll to the sides.

- ! Dragging or flicking will not activate anything on the screen.

GUID	GUID-3E94DC18-4F0D-4A82-AC50-1175DBD96056
Title	Scrolling
Changes	From Teacake new tone of voice Valid for eDream 3.0
Version	2
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released

## To scroll

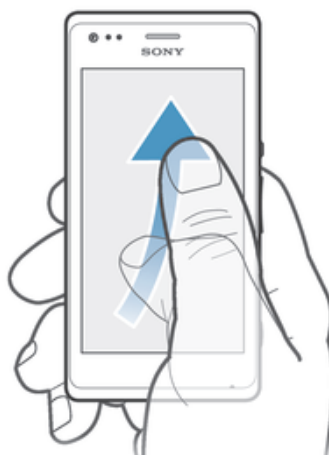


### ID: ILL-SONY-13NY-SCROLL

- Drag or flick your finger in the direction you want to scroll on the screen.
- 💡 To scroll more quickly, flick your finger in the direction you want to go on the screen.

GUID	GUID-589997EB-983E-4E86-832D-75437CC06999
Title	To scroll
Changes	from eD4.0: removed the note for Startup guide
Version	5
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released

## To flick



### ID: ILL-SONY-13NY-FLICK

- To scroll more quickly, flick your finger in the direction you want to go on the screen. You can wait for the scrolling movement to stop by itself, or you can stop it immediately by tapping the screen.

GUID	GUID-9D531CF3-373B-4C29-A83F-1DD9FFD3ED62
Title	To flick
Changes	Valid for eDream 3.0 Updated that you can flick in any direction. Not just up and down.
Version	2
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released

## Sensors

Your device has sensors that detect both light and proximity. The light sensor detects the ambient light level and adjusts the brightness of the screen accordingly. The proximity sensor turns the touch screen off during voice calls when your ear is close



to the screen. This prevents you from unintentionally activating other functions on your device when you are engaged in a call.

GUID	GUID-CF3F851C-41A7-4353-9B04-8F57E6BA8251
Title	Sensors
Changes	Term change for Odin/Yuga
Version	5
Author	Aiping
Status	Released*

## Using the lockscreen

On the lockscreen, you can play tracks, take photos and record videos without unlocking the screen.

GUID	GUID-7F914249-507B-4361-A5EA-BF223E1297D2
Title	Using the lockscreen
Changes	Device term change
Version	2
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### To take a photo from the lockscreen



#### ID: ILL-SONY-ACTIVATE-CAMERA-ON-LOCKSCREEN

- 1 To activate the screen, briefly press the power key (ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-AND-POWER-K90).
- 2 To activate the camera controls, drag (ID: ICN-SONY-LOCKSCREEN-CAMERA) to the left across the screen.
- 3 Tap (ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-CAP-MODE-NORMAL).

GUID	GUID-981E3E0B-ED63-40BC-9450-82D67F92A373
Title	To take a photo from the lockscreen
Changes	Valid for Huashan (only changed the position of illustration according to Jorgen comments)
Version	2
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### To play an audio track from the lockscreen





#### ID: ILL-SONY-ACTIVATE-MUSIC-PLAYER-ON-LOCKSCREEN

- 1 To activate the screen, briefly press the power key (ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-AND-POWER-K90).
- 2 To display the music player controls, drag (ID: ICN-SONY-LOCKSCREEN-MUSIC-PLAYER) to the right across the screen.
- 3 Tap (ID: ICN-SONY-SEMC-MUSIC-PLAY-NORMAL).




GUID	GUID-C213F36C-06E8-4172-B07A-EA59A7ED5ABA
Title	To play an audio track from the lockscreen
Changes	Valid from Huashan (only illustration position changed according ot Jorgen comments)
Version	3
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### To pause an audio track from the lockscreen

- 1 To activate the screen, briefly press the power key  **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-AND-POWER-K90**.
- 2 When the music player controls appear, tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-SEMC-MUSIC-PAUSE-NORMAL**.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-3B168A06-AFA8-4D87-8CBE-55C4F4C6B867
<i>Title</i>	To pause a playing track from the lockscreen
<i>Changes</i>	From ICS update: added another way of activating the screen
<i>Version</i>	2
<i>Author</i>	VikkiL
<i>Status</i>	Released

### To change the currently playing audio track from the lockscreen


- 1 To activate the screen, briefly press the power key  **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-AND-POWER-K90**.
- 2 When the music player controls appear, tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-SEMC-MUSIC-PREVIOUS-NORMAL** or  **ID: ICN-SONY-SEMC-MUSIC-NEXT-NORMAL**.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-278C3FC9-2E03-46AC-9E1F-8F2671CBBC73
<i>Title</i>	To change audio tracks from the lockscreen
<i>Changes</i>	For ICS update: added one more way of activating the screen
<i>Version</i>	2
<i>Author</i>	VikkiL
<i>Status</i>	Released

## Home screen

Indexterm: "Home screen"  
 Indexterm: "extensions"

Your phone **Home screen** [\[homescreen\\_strings\\_application\\_name\\_txt\]](#) is the equivalent of the desktop on a computer. It's your gateway to the main features in your phone. You can customise your **Home screen** [\[homescreen\\_strings\\_application\\_name\\_txt\]](#) with widgets, shortcuts, folders, themes, wallpaper and other items.

The **Home screen** [\[homescreen\\_strings\\_application\\_name\\_txt\]](#) extends beyond the regular screen display width, so you need to flick left or right to view content in one of the screen's four extensions.  **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-PAGINATION** shows which part of the **Home screen** [\[homescreen\\_strings\\_application\\_name\\_txt\]](#) you are in.



### **ID: SCR-SONY-13NY-HOMESCREEN**

The items in the bar at the bottom of the screen are always available for quick access.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-8EB25E2F-8807-407D-B459-A8E350B6D7D8
<i>Title</i>	Home screen

Changes	From eDream 4.0 all products: added text about 4-corner UI with condition "UI size"
Version	7
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released*

### To go to the Home screen

- Press  **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-AND-HOME**.



GUID	GUID-05D1C81E-123C-471F-BD70-D65BF2E49B8A
Title	To go to the Home screen
Changes	Valid for eDream3.0 and Gingerbread.
Version	1
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released

### To browse the Home screen

- Flick right or left.

GUID	GUID-A5C4ECEC-DED9-4FCB-B023-22DEA2CF2F2C
Title	To browse the Home screen
Changes	Valid for eDream3.0 and Gingerbread. Changed heading from "To view the extended Home screen" to "To browse the Home screen"
Version	4
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released

### To share an item from your Home screen

- 1 Press  **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-AND-HOME** to open your Home screen [home-screen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt].
- 2 Touch and hold an item until it magnifies and the phone vibrates, then drag the item to  **ID: ICN-SONY-DETAIL-SHARE-NORMAL**.
- 3 Select an option and confirm, if necessary. You can now share the applications and widgets you like with your friends so they can download and use them.

GUID	GUID-55FD963B-6AF2-4FC0-BA37-51D2AD4727A8
Title	To share an item from your Home screen
Changes	
Version	1
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released*

## Widgets


Indexterm: "widgets"

Widgets are small applications that you can use directly on your Home screen [home-screen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt]. For example, the "WALKMAN" widget allows you to start playing music directly.

Some widgets are resizable, so you can expand them to view more content or shrink them to save space on your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt].

GUID	GUID-31FA03AF-3EA8-4F67-997F-72FC7043FC88
Title	Widgets
Changes	For Taoshan: change music player widget to walkman widget
Version	10
Author	WangT
Status	Released

### To add a widget to the Home screen

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], press  **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**.
- 2 Tap **Add** [home\_menu\_add\_txt] > **Widgets** [home\_option\_add\_widget\_txt].
- 3 Tap a widget.

GUID	GUID-7AA3E1DD-C7DD-47D2-8DB4-4BB05D9E7686
Title	To add a widget to the Home screen
Changes	From 4.0.1 Urushi: Updated labels in the topic
Version	7
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released*

## To resize a widget

Indexterm: "widgets"  
Sub-indexterm: "resizing"

- 1 Touch and hold a widget until it magnifies and the phone vibrates, then release the widget. If the widget can be resized, for example, the Calendar widget, then a highlighted frame and resizing dots appear.
- 2 Drag the dots inward or outward to shrink or expand the widget.
- 3 To confirm the new size of the widget, tap anywhere on the **Home screen** [home-screen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] .

GUID	GUID-379CF5F0-A8C7-4D6F-A96C-9D06316E050B
Title	To resize a widget
Changes	For Mint Amy. Added an example of resizable widget in step 1 as commented by ATT.
Version	3
Author	Xiixin Li
Status	Released*

## To get an overview of all widgets on your Home screen

- Pinch on any area of your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] . All widgets from different parts of your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] are now displayed in one view.
- 💡 When all **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] widgets are combined in one view, tap on any widget to go to the part of the **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] containing that widget.

GUID	GUID-172CC58A-1942-4B8C-BD9E-816B85EA3BAA
Title	To get an overview of the widgets on all Home screens
Changes	From eDream 4.0: as per X-team comments
Version	2
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released

## Rearranging your Home screen

Indexterm: "Home screen"  
Sub-indexterm: "customising"

Customise the appearance of your Home screen and change the features that you can access from it. Change the screen background, move items around, create folders, and add shortcuts to contacts.

GUID	GUID-F0E2EDDE-9A6D-4354-BCE5-D2FFE325FC77
Title	Rearranging your Home screen
Changes	From eDream4.0: added UI size condition
Version	2
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released*

## To open the options menu of your Home screen

You can open the **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] options menu in two ways:

- From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , press **⌘: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**.
- Touch and hold on any part of your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] .

GUID	GUID-006FEB36-CD2E-4B2A-B429-E6FF72753075
Title	To open the options menu of your Home screen
Changes	
Version	1
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released*

### To add a shortcut to the Home screen

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], press **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**.
  - 2 Tap **Add** [home\_menu\_add\_txt] > **Shortcuts** [home\_option\_add\_shortcut\_txt].
  - 3 Find and select a shortcut.
- 💡 Add an application shortcut directly from the Application screen by touching and holding the application.

GUID	GUID-846B78FE-AD6C-47FE-9BF8-715A3CBB7B61
Title	To add a shortcut to the Home screen
Changes	From 4.0.1 Urushi: updated labels
Version	2
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released*

### To move an item on the Home screen

- 1 Press **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-AND-HOME** to open your **Home screen** [home-screen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt].
- 2 Touch and hold an item until it magnifies and the phone vibrates, then drag the item to the new location.

GUID	GUID-E0065909-6DCC-4137-BC73-976CB447E526
Title	To move an item on the Home screen
Changes	from edream4.0: moved the tip to "To add a folder to your home screen"
Version	2
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released*

### To delete an item from the Home screen

- Touch and hold an item until it magnifies and the phone vibrates, then drag the item to **ID: ICN-SONY-MENU-DELETE**.

GUID	GUID-B9D51246-2767-4FC7-B6A9-7F3A98343A35
Title	To delete an item on the Home screen
Changes	Created for eDream3.0
Version	1
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released*

### To add a folder to the Home screen

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], press **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**.
  - 2 Tap **Add** [home\_menu\_add\_txt] > **Folder** [home\_option\_add\_folder\_txt].
  - 3 Enter a name for the folder and tap **Done** [gui\_done\_txt].
- 💡 Drag and drop an item on top of another item on your Home screen to create a folder automatically.

GUID	GUID-B4485B5D-75F7-46E8-A35F-7833E55CF1DC
Title	To create a folder on the Home screen
Changes	From 4.0.1 SZ and UG for coming products: functional change on folder creation on HS
Version	6
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released*

### To add items to a folder

- Touch and hold an item until it magnifies and the phone vibrates, then drag the item to the folder.

GUID	GUID-59731CD1-AB4A-40AE-BCCC-5D64928E2B5E
Title	To add items to a folder
Changes	Valid for eDream3.0 and Gingerbread. Updated instruction text so it says "item" instead of "application icon" to make more generic and align with the heading.
Version	2
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released*

### To rename a folder

- 1 Tap the folder to open it.
- 2 Touch the folder's title bar to show the **Folder name** [home\_folder\_dialog\_folder\_name\_txt] field.
- 3 Enter the new folder name and tap **Done** [gui\_done\_txt] .

GUID	GUID-D78DB4F3-D3D1-495D-B904-21104B8F19CA
Title	To rename a folder
Changes	From 4.0.1 Urushi: updated labels
Version	4
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released*

### Changing the background of your Home screen

Indexterm: "animated wallpaper"  
 Indexterm: "live wallpaper"  
 Indexterm: "wallpaper"  
 Indexterm: "themes"

Adapt the **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] to your own style using wallpapers and different themes.

GUID	GUID-ABAA5C9B-0C1F-41EE-8456-EDAF70D2BB98
Title	Changing the background of your Home screen
Changes	From eDr4.0.1.1: changed index term from "theme" to "themes"
Version	5
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released

### To change your Home screen wallpaper

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , press **⌘: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**.
  - 2 Tap **Wallpaper** [home\_menu\_wallpaper\_txt] , then select a wallpaper.
- 💡 You can use a photo you have taken, or an animation. Go to Google Play™ and other sources to download, for example, live wallpapers that change with the changing hours of the day.

GUID	GUID-19E276DF-4D6A-44AF-8D86-5CAAFFD4BFDD
Title	To change your Home screen wallpaper
Changes	change Android Market™ to Google Play™ based on legal requirement
Version	7.1.1
Author	WangT
Status	Released

### To set a theme

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , press **⌘: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**.
  - 2 Tap **Theme** [home\_menu\_theme\_txt] , then select a theme.
- ! When you change a theme, the background also changes in some applications.

GUID	GUID-506DA76F-B990-4363-A85D-2F100F4C36A7
Title	To set a theme
Changes	From eDream4.0.1 Urushi: Changing theme is applicable and affects more than just Home screen - so update the topic accordingly
Version	3
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released*

### Accessing and using applications

Open applications from shortcuts on your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] or from the Application screen.

GUID	GUID-935DE265-ADC5-4C4D-8BD5-D097758DA59C
Title	Accessing and using applications
Changes	Created for eDream3.0
Version	1
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released

## Application screen

Indexterm: "applications"

Sub-indexterm: "screen"

The Application screen, which you open from your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], contains the applications that come pre-installed on your device as well as the applications you download.

The Application screen extends beyond the regular screen width, so you need to flick left and right to view all content.

GUID	GUID-F02CAFC3-E592-4B0D-AA00-E5631B4A9301
Title	Application screen
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	3
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released

### To open the Application screen



**ID: SCR-SONY-13NY-APPLICATIONS-SCREEN**

- From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.

GUID	GUID-A798DDA3-C3C7-49D5-975F-0D42DA2CB916
Title	To open the Application screen
Changes	Valid from eDream3.0. Index term removed.
Version	3
Author	WangT
Status	Released

### To browse the Application screen

- From the Application screen, flick right or left.




GUID	GUID-76BB630C-11CA-44CF-A042-92465E3899FA
Title	To browse the application screens
Changes	The content is same as version 3. Just changed "application" to "Application".
Version	4
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

### To create a shortcut to an application on the Home screen

- From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- Touch and hold an application icon until the screen vibrates, then drag the icon to the top of the screen. The **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] opens.
- Drag the icon to the desired location on the **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], then release your finger.

GUID	GUID-1CB2F7C4-2E83-4EAB-AFFB-0957648C639D
Title	To create a shortcut to an application on the Home screen
Changes	Updated from version 3. Step 2 description changes because of Odin and Yuga's UI changes.
Version	4
Author	Vera Qu
Status	Released*

## To share an application from your Application screen

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Tap  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU , then tap Share [share] . All applications which can be shared are indicated by  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APP-SHARE .
- 3 Tap the application that you want to share, then select an option and confirm, if necessary. A link to a download of the application is sent to the people you have selected.

GUID	GUID-3626E628-C31A-4C0E-BCEC-07EB17CF2C3F
Title	To share an application from your Application screen
Changes	Updated from version1. Step 2 changes due to UI's change for Odin and Yuga.
Version	2
Author	Vera Qu
Status	Released*

## Opening and closing applications



GUID	GUID-C41A794C-3079-4816-A08C-45D4DBEC5234
Title	Opening and closing applications
Changes	Valid for eDream3.0 and Gingerbread.
Version	1
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released

### To open an application

- From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] or the Application screen, tap the application.

GUID	GUID-A38931CB-ACFB-42B2-B95E-852ABB09E511
Title	To open an application
Changes	Created for eDream3.0
Version	1
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released

### To close an application

- Press  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-AND-BACK.
- 💡 Some applications are paused when you press  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-AND-HOME to exit, while other applications may continue to run in the background. In the first case, the next time you open the application, you can continue where you left off. Remember that some applications may cause data connection charges when they are running in the background, for example, social networking services.

GUID	GUID-370B9F32-5544-4DA2-8DF2-414E9A7F69BA
Title	To close an application
Changes	From eDream6.0: added text about data usage for paused applications
Version	2
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released

## Recently used applications window

Indexterm: "recently used applications window"

You can switch between recently used applications from this window. You can also open small apps.

GUID	GUID-4E475135-9A16-4587-AB71-F73F430BE6A9
Title	Recently used applications window
Changes	From Blue 1.0: text changes made - added description about small apps
Version	2
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released

### To open the recently used applications window

- Press  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-OPEN-RECENT-APPS .

GUID	GUID-A60AC121-B7D1-4A48-859B-F8CA4DC4C077
Title	To open the recently used applications window
Changes	writing style update - delete the last sentence based on minimalism



Version	5
Author	WangT
Status	Released*

## Using small apps

From the recently used applications window, you can get quick access to several small apps at any time using the small apps bar. A small app only takes up a small area of your screen. So you can interact with a small app and another application at the same time on the same screen.


GUID	GUID-2764F528-7A9A-401F-8523-DBB180E8235A
Title	Using small apps
Changes	
Version	1
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released*

### To open the small apps bar

- Press  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-OPEN-RECENT-APPS. The small apps bar appears at the bottom of the screen.

GUID	GUID-C4580F48-66EB-4E34-AB54-977834E6926B
Title	To open the small apps bar
Changes	For nextstp UG
Version	4
Author	JorgenL
Status	Draft

### To open a small app

- To make the small apps bar appear, press  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-OPEN-RECENT-APPS .
- Tap the small app that you want to open. A small app window appears.

GUID	GUID-53383553-C8C3-4EA0-8F4E-DA9CB7757BAE
Title	To open a small app
Changes	update for FAQ: add a condition for icon issue; add a small app bar image due to ed comments (no effect for UG); no other change
Version	2
Author	Vera Qu
Status	Released*

### To close a small app

- Tap  ID: ICN-SONY-BTN-CLOSE-NORMAL on the small app window.

GUID	GUID-99100D9A-1CCC-4DD4-ABC8-2B58F09F39AE
Title	To close a small app
Changes	
Version	1
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released

### To move a small app

- When the small app is open, touch and hold the top left corner of the small app, then move it to the desired location.

GUID	GUID-E71EDE79-D34F-41C1-9300-ABE639400C0F
Title	To move a small app
Changes	Updated from version 2. Change the icon to "the name field of the small app" for Odin & Yuga.
Version	3
Author	Vera Qu
Status	Released


### To minimise a small app

- When the small app is open, touch and hold the top left corner of the small app, then drag it to the right edge or to the bottom edge of the screen.

GUID	GUID-3FA301BE-1DE5-4200-A944-FD66851191D2
Title	To minimise a small app
Changes	Updated from version 2. Change the icon to "the name field of the small app" for Odin & Yuga.
Version	3


Author	Vera Qu
Status	Released

### To rearrange your small apps

- 1 To make the small apps bar appear, press  **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-OPEN-RECENT-APPS**.
- 2 Touch and hold a small app and drag it to the desired position in the small apps bar.



GUID	GUID-3830D3E3-63FD-4C72-A393-E6F5E8D58EA5
Title	To arrange your small apps
Changes	
Version	1
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released*

### To remove a small app from the small apps bar

- 1 To make the small apps bar appear, press  **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-OPEN-RECENT-APPS**.
- 2 Touch and hold a small app icon and drag it away from the small apps bar.




GUID	GUID-BF1EE6E5-D398-49CC-89A9-CCE7426CFF47
Title	To remove a small app from the recently used applications window
Changes	
Version	1
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released*

### To restore a previously removed small app

- 1 To make the small apps bar appear, press  **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-OPEN-RECENT-APPS**.
- 2 Tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-BROWSER-ADD** > **Installed small apps** [[dialog\\_add\\_app\\_installed\\_title](#)].
- 3 Select the small app that you want to restore.

GUID	GUID-1B077C5F-3405-4E30-BC25-453CECB522D9
Title	To restore a previously removed small app
Changes	
Version	1
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released*

### To download a small app

- 1 To make the small apps bar appear, press  **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-OPEN-RECENT-APPS**.
- 2 Tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-BROWSER-ADD** >  **ID: ICN-SONY-APP-MARKET-PLACE**.
- 3 Find a small app that you want to download, then follow the instructions to complete the installation.

GUID	GUID-AE4A69D2-7CB5-44EF-BF20-90B0B35793CB
Title	To download a small app from Play Store
Changes	
Version	1
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released*

## Application menu

You can open a menu at any time when you are using an application. The menu will look different depending on which application you are using.

GUID	GUID-7ECF296C-1511-432D-A846-7C99F6F65764
Title	Application menu
Changes	From Blue: for phones without the menu key - no text change and removed the illustration only
Version	2
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released

### To open a menu in an application

- While using the application, press **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**.
- ! A menu is not available in all applications.

GUID	GUID-C5E4E280-0AA6-4076-B7F6-8777FD219744
Title	To open a menu in an application
Changes	From Shakira
Version	1
Author	AnnE
Status	Released*

### Rearranging your Application screen

Move the applications around on the Application screen according to your preferences.

GUID	GUID-3809890F-C0C3-438A-BA16-A3C7F978256A
Title	Rearranging your Application screen
Changes	Valid for eDream3.0
Version	1
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released

### To arrange applications on the Application screen

Indexterm: "applications"  
Sub-indexterm: "arranging"  
Indexterm: "applications"  
Sub-indexterm: "sorting"

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL** to go to the Application screen.
- 2 Tap the drop-down list on the top left of the screen and select an option.

GUID	GUID-115D9148-D5DC-49BA-8428-A1AD178487AF
Title	To arrange your applications on the Application screen
Changes	Updated from version 6. Step 2 changes for Odin & Yuga because the icon is not be used.
Version	7
Author	Vera Qu
Status	Released

### To move an application on the Application screen

- 1 Open the Application screen.
  - 2 Touch and hold an item until it magnifies and the device vibrates, then drag the item to the new location.
- ! You can only move your applications when **Own order** [home\_action\_bar\_option\_free\_sort\_txt] is selected.

GUID	GUID-EE508701-3826-449B-BD0F-61BABEEA74C3
Title	To move an application on the Application screen
Changes	Updated from version 5. Description changes due to UI changes. For Odin & Yuga.
Version	6
Author	Vera Qu
Status	Released

### To uninstall an application from the Application screen

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Tap **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**, then tap **Uninstall** [uninstall\_text]. All uninstalleable applications are indicated by **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-UNINSTALL**.
- 3 Tap the application that you want to uninstall, then tap **Uninstall** [uninstall\_text].

GUID	GUID-553D1225-BF53-4ED7-A71D-7D887D7F3D2B
Title	To uninstall an application from the Application screen
Changes	Updated from version 2. Step 2 and step 3 description changes due to Odin & Yuga's UI changes.
Version	3
Author	Vera Qu
Status	Released*

## Status and notifications

Indexterm: "status"  
 Sub-indexterm: "bar"  
 Indexterm: "notification"  
 Sub-indexterm: "light"  
 Indexterm: "settings"  
 Sub-indexterm: "quick settings"

The status bar at the top of your screen shows what's going on in your phone. To the left you get notifications when there is something new or ongoing. For example, new message and calendar notifications appear here. The right side shows the signal strength, battery status, and other information.



**ID: SCR-SONY-13NY-STATUSBAR**

The status bar allows you to adjust basic settings on your phone, for example, Wi-Fi®, Bluetooth™, data traffic, and sound. You can also open the settings menu from the Notification panel to change other settings.

A notification light also gives you battery status information and some notifications. For example, a flashing blue light means there is a new message or a missed call. The notification light may not work when the battery level is low.



**ID: ILL-SONY-13NY-NOTIFICATION-LAMP**

GUID	GUID-065ACA94-7931-42F2-AEB8-381F304937E1
Title	Status and notifications
Changes	For Tsubasa html User guide. Fixed bad image view by adding a p tag.
Version	6.1.1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released

## Checking notifications and ongoing activities

Indexterm: "notification"  
 Sub-indexterm: "panel"

You can drag down the status bar to open the Notification panel and get more information. For example, you can use the panel to open a new message or view a calendar event. You can also open some applications that run in the background, such as the music player.

GUID	GUID-50D94BC7-3149-444A-88A6-86D400E5A76B
Title	Checking notifications and ongoing activities
Changes	Changed "running applications" to "some applications that run in the background" according to TID's comments
Version	4
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

## To open the Notification panel



### ID: SCR-SONY-13NY-NOTIFICATION-PANEL

- Drag the status bar downwards.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-8560FF8D-B09C-4CDE-9A2D-79856DE785EC
<i>Title</i>	To open the Notifications panel
<i>Changes</i>	From Robyn - Removed the tip
<i>Version</i>	2
<i>Author</i>	Komall
<i>Status</i>	Released

## To close the Notification panel



### ID: SCR-SONY-13NY-NOTIFICATION-PANEL-CLOSE

- Drag the tab at the bottom of the Notification panel upwards.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-91179B0D-7B4D-48B3-B591-10D1868C3561
<i>Title</i>	To close the Notification panel
<i>Changes</i>	Valid for eDream3.0 and Gingerbread.
<i>Version</i>	3
<i>Author</i>	VikkiL
<i>Status</i>	Released

## To open a running application from the Notification panel

- Tap the icon for the running application to open it.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-1CC3ECCB-2344-4CC1-8764-29BD69172A3D
<i>Title</i>	To open a running application from the Notification panel
<i>Changes</i>	ICS update: editorial review comments - minimalism
<i>Version</i>	3
<i>Author</i>	VikkiL
<i>Status</i>	Released

### To dismiss a notification from the Notification panel

- Place your finger on a notification and flick left or right.

GUID	GUID-967CAF72-88E4-4B35-ADD1-2B0EA7CF61A4
Title	To dismiss a notification from the Notification panel
Changes	
Version	1
Author	VikkiL
Status	Released

### To clear the Notification panel

- From the Notification panel, tap **Clear** [\[status\\_bar\\_clear\\_all\\_button\]](#).

GUID	GUID-DA62F1FF-BE58-4F3B-B236-8F2F85655D4F
Title	To clear the Notification panel
Changes	Valid for Rrobyn/Mimmi (change in label)
Version	2
Author	Komall
Status	Released*

## Setting your phone from the Notification panel

Indexterm: "notification"  
Sub-indexterm: "panel"  
Sub-indexterm: "setting"

You can open the settings menu from the Notification panel to adjust basic phone settings. For example, you can turn on Wi-Fi®.

GUID	GUID-001BB4C3-E0FB-4953-8605-57D48285C63C
Title	Setting your device from the Notification panel
Changes	
Version	1
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released*

### To open the phone settings menu from the Notification panel

- Drag the status bar downwards.
- Tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-MENU-SETTINGS**.

GUID	GUID-DEDF9332-F8E7-4B61-BF9C-C58055553DBA
Title	To open settings menu from the notification panel
Changes	Valid from Mint (only Step 1 added)
Version	3
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released*

### To adjust sound settings from the Notification panel

- Drag the status bar downwards.
- Tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-STAT-SYS-SPEAKERPHONE**.

GUID	GUID-379AC15A-BC4F-4496-A74F-090064D224AA
Title	To adjust your sound settings from the Notification panel
Changes	
Version	1
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### To control the Bluetooth™ function from the Notification panel

- Drag the status bar downwards.
- Tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-STAT-SYS-DATA-BLUETOOTH**.

GUID	GUID-76B8B30E-0F68-45DE-A79C-2F11B0F0604A
Title	To turn on or off the Bluetooth™ function from the Notification panel
Changes	
Version	1
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

## To control the Wi-Fi® function from the Notification panel

- 1 Drag the status bar downwards.
- 2 Tap  ID: ICN-SONY-STAT-SYS-WIFI-SIGNAL-4.

GUID	GUID-0E0F12AA-C120-4B5F-9977-A81FC38FC4D7
Title	To turn on or off Wi-Fi® from the Notification panel
Changes	
Version	1
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released*

## To enable or disable data traffic from the Notification panel

- 1 Drag the status bar downwards.
- 2 Tap  ID: ICN-SONY-STAT-SYS-DATA-TRAFFIC.


GUID	GUID-2E74E4DD-6C24-4177-9238-032630E89AAF
Title	To enable or disable data traffic from the Notification panel
Changes	
Version	1
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released*

## Phone settings menu

View and change your phone settings from the Settings menu.

GUID	GUID-99D19D2C-0BF8-4893-A15F-7CD052D96170
Title	Phone settings menu
Changes	Valid for eDream 3.0
Version	1
Author	JessicaL
Status	Released*

## To access the phone settings

- 1 From the Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Tap Settings [settings\_label].

GUID	GUID-A9F73FEB-FB36-4722-BF69-5ABA7B7B020B
Title	To access the phone settings
Changes	Valid for Rachael/Robyn/Mimmi eDream 2.0. Valid for eDream 3.0.
Version	4
Author	Komall
Status	Released*

## Typing text

Indexterm:	"keyboard"
Indexterm:	"Phonepad"
Indexterm:	"text input method"
Indexterm:	"symbols"
Indexterm:	"caps lock"
GUID	GUID-5EF956D7-B1A6-46E3-BE7A-206DBA9DAF00
Title	Typing text - keyboard and keypad
Changes	Valid from eDream 4.0.
Version	5
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released*

## On-screen keyboard

Indexterm: "on-screen keyboard"

Tap the keys of the on-screen QWERTY keyboard to enter text conveniently. Some applications open the on-screen keyboard automatically. You can also open this keyboard by touching a text field.

GUID	GUID-047240C9-CBE3-4076-B626-8838F1999489
Title	On-screen keyboard
Changes	Valid from eDream 4.0.
Version	1
Author	RongrongZ

## Using the on-screen keyboard



### ID: SCR-10AU-ON-SCREEN-KEYBOARD

- 1 Change the character case and turn on the caps lock. For some languages, this key is used to access extra characters in the language.
- 2 Close the on-screen keyboard view. Note that this icon does not appear in portrait mode.
- 3 Display numbers and symbols.
- 4 Personalise your keyboard. This key disappears after the keyboard is personalised.
- 5 Enter a space.
- 6 Enter a carriage return or confirm text input.
- 7 Delete a character before the cursor.

! All illustrations are for illustration purposes only and may not accurately depict the actual device.

GUID	GUID-C82BF299-B2B7-4FFE-911E-D0FC3A0B529E
Title	Using on-screen keyboard
Changes	Device term change
Version	8
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released*

### To display the on-screen keyboard to enter text

- Tap a text entry field.

GUID	GUID-D53410B6-16DD-4BE2-8862-B460B3A8643F
Title	To display the keypad/keyboard to enter text
Changes	Valid from eDream 4.0. Updated condition on keyboard-keypad.
Version	5
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released



### To hide the on-screen keyboard

- When the on-screen keyboard is open, tap  ID: KEY-TEXT-INPUT-BACK.

GUID	GUID-B60C1834-DDC9-421A-8F96-2E9038A514BE
Title	To hide the on-screen keyboard/Phonepad
Changes	for Odin; change a key
Version	5
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released



## To personalise the on-screen keyboard

- 1 Open the on-screen keyboard, then tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-TEXT-INPUT-SETUPGUIDE-WAND-FEEDBACK**.
  - 2 Follow the instructions to personalise your on-screen keyboard, for example, mark the **Smiley key** [\[textInput\\_strings\\_settings\\_show\\_smiley\]](#) and **Gesture input** [\[textInput\\_strings\\_settings\\_trace\\_input\]](#) checkboxes.
-  If you don't mark the **Smiley key** [\[textInput\\_strings\\_settings\\_show\\_smiley\]](#) checkbox when you personalise the on-screen keyboard, the smiley icon will not appear.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-1833FEDD-7B56-4FD2-B800-187FF06AB7D9
<i>Title</i>	To personalise the keyboard
<i>Changes</i>	for pollux; add "gesture input" to step 2
<i>Version</i>	3
<i>Author</i>	Gan Lu
<i>Status</i>	Draft

## To use the on-screen keyboard in landscape orientation

- When you enter text, turn the device sideways.
- ! For the keyboard to support this feature, landscape mode must be supported by the application you are using, and your screen orientation settings must be set to automatic.



<i>GUID</i>	GUID-E3D818B3-9DFF-4DDC-B279-5CD46A966698
<i>Title</i>	To use the on-screen keyboard/keypad in landscape orientation
<i>Changes</i>	Device Term Change
<i>Version</i>	5
<i>Author</i>	Gan Lu
<i>Status</i>	Released

## To enter text using the on-screen keyboard

- 1 To enter a character visible on the keyboard, tap the character.
- 2 To enter a character variant, touch and hold a regular keyboard character to get a list of available options, then select from the list. For example, to enter "é", touch and hold "e" until other options appear, then, while keeping your finger pressed on the keyboard, drag to and select "é".




<i>GUID</i>	GUID-AD062D73-DE09-468F-8DCB-3F17D5A83CE9
<i>Title</i>	To enter text using the on-screen keyboard
<i>Changes</i>	Valid from eDream 4.0. Specified for on-screen keyboard.
<i>Version</i>	3
<i>Author</i>	RongrongZ
<i>Status</i>	Released

## To shift between upper-case and lower-case letters

- Before you enter a letter, tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-TEXT-INPUT-SHIFT-FEEDBACK** to switch to upper-case  **ID: ICN-SONY-TEXT-INPUT-SHIFT-CAPS-FEEDBACK**, or vice versa.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-E5ADF539-526B-4CA6-BFB2-F17AECB73C5A
<i>Title</i>	To shift between upper-case and lower-case letters
<i>Changes</i>	Updated as per FG comment. Valid for all eDream 2.1 products
<i>Version</i>	3
<i>Author</i>	JuliaZ
<i>Status</i>	Released

## To turn on the caps lock

- Before you type a word, tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-TEXT-INPUT-SHIFT-FEEDBACK** or  **ID: ICN-SONY-TEXT-INPUT-SHIFT-CAPS-FEEDBACK** until  **ID: ICN-SONY-TEXT-INPUT-SHIFT-CAPS-LOCK-FEEDBACK** appears.


<i>GUID</i>	GUID-CA02935F-2636-481C-8064-DC00F523D22D
<i>Title</i>	To turn on the Caps lock
<i>Changes</i>	Updated as per FG review comments. Valid for all eDream 2.1 products
<i>Version</i>	3
<i>Author</i>	JuliaZ
<i>Status</i>	Released*

### To enter numbers or symbols

- When you enter text, tap **ID: ICN-SONY-TEXTINPUT-NUMBERS-SYMBOLS**. A keyboard with numbers and symbols appears. Tap **ID: ICN-SONY-TEXTINPUT-SYMBOL-PAGES** to view more options.

GUID	GUID-829C61AB-3536-4122-80EF-E4D3C174FE52
Title	To enter numbers or symbols using the keyboard/keypad
Changes	Valid from eDream4.0. Added the page icon info.
Version	2
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released

### To enter common punctuation marks

- When you finish entering a word, tap the space bar.
  - Select a punctuation mark from the candidate bar. The selected mark is inserted before the space.
-  To quickly enter a full stop, tap the space bar twice when you finish entering a word.

GUID	GUID-6589FC1E-1265-4100-93E5-7006D5DD1E0E
Title	To enter common punctuations
Changes	Valid from eDream 6.0.
Version	1
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released

### To delete characters

- Tap to place the cursor after the character you want to delete, then tap **ID: ICN-SONY-DELETE-PHONE-NUMBER-BLK**.

GUID	GUID-A3C39984-81D4-419A-9F01-63DC364540FB
Title	To delete characters
Changes	
Version	1
Author	JuliaZ
Status	Released

### To enter a carriage return

- When you enter text, tap **ID: ICN-SONY-TEXT-INPUT-LIGHT-ENTER** to enter a carriage return.

GUID	GUID-83E45AEE-6F56-4817-8260-CE9E7E139097
Title	To turn to the next line in text
Changes	Valid for eDream 3.0
Version	1
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released

### To select text

- Enter some text, then tap and hold the text. The word you tap gets highlighted by tabs on both sides.
- Drag the tabs left or right to select more text.

GUID	GUID-AE2DF08C-CE44-4038-A35A-347DBD2C5903
Title	To select text
Changes	for Nanhu; change "double-tap" to "tap and hold"
Version	5
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released

### To edit text in landscape orientation

- Enter some text, then double-tap the entered text.
- Select the text you want to work with, then tap **Edit...** [extract\_edit\_menu\_button] and select an option.

GUID	GUID-E5B2A668-8E68-4FC8-948B-CB0BCFA0F634
Title	To edit text in landscape orientation
Changes	For Aoba Amy. Removed the note per editorial comment.
Version	3.1.1
Author	QianWang
Status	Released

## To edit text in portrait orientation

- 1 Enter some text, then double-tap the entered text to make the application bar appear.
- 2 Select the text you want to edit, then use the application bar to make your desired changes.

GUID	GUID-570FACF3-512A-4631-82C7-DE1CC414CE8C
Title	To edit text in portrait orientation
Changes	For Aoba Amy ICS. Removed the note per editor's comment
Version	3.1.1
Author	QianWang
Status	Released

## Application bar



### ID: SCR-11ICS-TOOLBAR-EDITTEXT

- |   |                           |
|---|---------------------------|
| 1 | Close the application bar |
| 2 | Select all text           |
| 3 | Cut text                  |
| 4 | Copy text                 |
| 5 | Paste text                |

- ! **ID: ICN-SONY-MAGNIFIER-PASTE** only appears when you have text stored on the clipboard.

GUID	GUID-3773B154-CF41-471F-9469-DC7CD5560CCB
Title	Application bar
Changes	
Version	1
Author	Vera Qu
Status	Released*

## Using the Gesture input [[textinput\\_strings\\_settings\\_trace\\_input](#)] function to write words


Indexterm: "gesture input"

You can input text by sliding your finger from letter to letter on the on-screen keyboard.

- ! **Gesture input** [[textinput\\_strings\\_settings\\_trace\\_input](#)] is only available when you use the on-screen keyboard.

GUID	GUID-0D50805D-88A7-417D-BF39-293347812DD9
Title	Gesture input
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	4
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released*

### To enter text using the Gesture input [\[textinput\\_strings\\_settings\\_trace\\_input\]](#) function

- 1 When you enter text using the on-screen keyboard, slide your finger from letter to letter to trace the word you want to write.
  - 2 Lift up your finger when you've finished entering a word. A word is suggested based on the letters you have traced. If necessary, select the correct word in the candidate bar.
  - 3 To view more options, scroll right or left in the word candidate bar. If you cannot find the desired word, tap **X** [ID: ICN-SONY-DELETE-PHONE-NUMBER-BLK](#) once to delete the entire word. Then try again to trace the word using the Gesture input function, or tap each letter to enter the word.
  - 4 If the **Space between gestures** [\[textinput\\_strings\\_settings\\_trace\\_auto\\_accept\]](#) setting is activated, trace the next word that you want to enter. If not, tap the space bar and then trace the next word you want to enter.
-  To enter joined compound words when the **Space between gestures** [\[textinput\\_strings\\_settings\\_trace\\_auto\\_accept\]](#) setting is activated, you may need to slide to enter the first part of the word, then tap each letter to enter the rest of the word.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-70F1F614-D699-4D32-98AF-4E0CBE268385
<i>Title</i>	To enter text using the Gesture input function
<i>Changes</i>	Device Term Change
<i>Version</i>	5
<i>Author</i>	Gan Lu
<i>Status</i>	Released

### To change the Gesture input [\[textinput\\_strings\\_settings\\_trace\\_input\]](#) settings

- 1 When you enter text using the on-screen keyboard, tap **X** [ID: ICN-SONY-TEXTINPUT-NUMBERS-SYMBOLS](#).
- 2 Tap **X** [ID: ICN-SONY-MENU-SETTINGS](#), then tap **Keyboard settings** [\[textinput\\_strings\\_input\\_options\\_menu\\_item\\_personalize\]](#).
- 3 Tap **Text input settings** [\[textinput\\_strings\\_settings\\_quick\\_text\]](#).
- 4 Mark or unmark the **Gesture input** [\[textinput\\_strings\\_settings\\_trace\\_input\]](#) checkbox.
- 5 If you want to automatically add a space between gestures without having to tap the space bar each time, mark the **Space between gestures** [\[textinput\\_strings\\_settings\\_trace\\_auto\\_accept\]](#) checkbox.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-3C41CA62-030A-483B-8C09-E1CB01CAF541
<i>Title</i>	To change the Gesture input settings
<i>Changes</i>	Valid for Nozomi ICS; text changes made; operation steps changed
<i>Version</i>	4
<i>Author</i>	WangT
<i>Status</i>	Released*

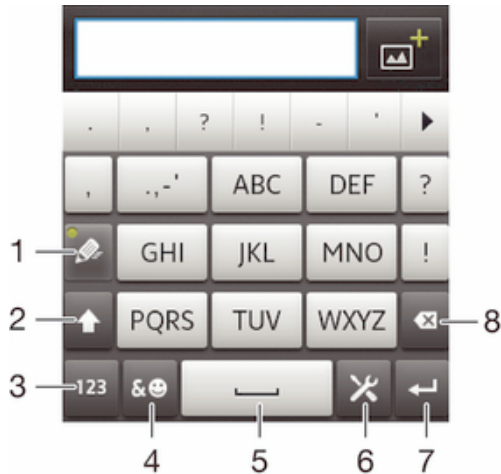
## Phonepad

Indexterm: "Phonepad"

The Phonepad is similar to a standard 12-key telephone keypad. It gives you predictive text and multi-tap input options. You can activate the Phonepad text input method via the keyboard settings. The Phonepad is only available in portrait orientation.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-9D94BF81-E127-4971-B769-92AF75781DAE
<i>Title</i>	Phonepad
<i>Changes</i>	Valid from eDream 4.0.
<i>Version</i>	1
<i>Author</i>	RongrongZ
<i>Status</i>	Released

## Using the Phonepad



### ID: SCR-11-PHONEPAD-OVERVIEW

- 1 Choose a text input option
- 2 Change the character case and turn on the caps lock
- 3 Display numbers
- 4 Display symbols and smileys
- 5 Enter a space
- 6 Enter a carriage return or confirm text input
- 7 Delete a character before the cursor

! All illustrations are for illustration purposes only and may not accurately depict the actual device.

GUID	GUID-CF8AE6C3-3225-46D4-8632-18F2F4FD71EF
Title	Using the Phonepad
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	5
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released




### To open the Phonepad for the first time

- 1 Tap a text entry field, then tap **123**. ID: ICN-SONY-TEXTINPUT-NUMBERS-SYMBOLS.
- 2 Tap **X**. ID: ICN-SONY-MENU-SETTINGS, then tap **Keyboard settings** [textInput\_strings\_input\_options\_menu\_item\_personalize] .
- 3 Tap **Keyboard appearance** [textInput\_strings\_settings\_keyboard\_appearance] > **Keyboard layout** [textInput\_strings\_settings\_keyboard\_layout\_title] .
- 4 Select the Phonepad.

💡 The Phonepad can only be used in portrait mode.


GUID	GUID-63194001-9DA2-43FD-98FC-B549C9D81580
Title	To open the Phonepad for the first time
Changes	Valid for Hikari: change an icon on step 1
Version	4
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released*

### To enter text using the Phonepad

- When  ID: ICN-SONY-TEXT-INPUT-PHONEPAD-SINGLE-TAP-ON appears in the Phonepad, tap each character key only once, even if the letter you want is not the first letter on the key. Tap the word that appears or tap  ID: ICN-SONY-TEXT-INPUT-PREDICTION-ARROW-RIGHT to view more word suggestions and select a word from the list.
- When  ID: ICN-SONY-TEXT-INPUT-PHONEPAD-SINGLE-TAP-OFF appears in the Phonepad, tap the on-screen key for the character you want to enter. Keep pressing this key until the desired character is selected. Then do the same for the next character you want to enter, and so on.


GUID	GUID-25EC71FC-8474-4FEB-99F5-ED0485C15922
Title	To enter text using the on-screen keypad
Changes	Remove incorrect usage of the context tag
Version	2
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released

### To enter numbers using the Phonepad

- When the Phonepad is open, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-TEXTINPUT-NUMBERS-HORIZONTAL. A Phonepad with numbers appears.

GUID	GUID-99C92908-9500-4C3A-B3C1-FDC17779AE84
Title	To enter numbers using the virtual keypad/keyboard
Changes	Valid from eDream4.0 Smultron. On-screen keypad.
Version	4
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released

### To insert symbols and smileys using the Phonepad

- 1 When the Phonepad is open, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-TEXT-INPUT-PHONEPAD-SYM-SMILEY. A grid with symbols and smileys appears.
- 2 Scroll up or down to view more options. Tap a symbol or smiley to select it.

GUID	GUID-A9123BFE-979A-40FB-9E68-904BDE6FF860
Title	To insert symbols and smileys using the keypad
Changes	Valid from eDream4.0 Smultron - On-screen keypad.
Version	2
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released*




## Keyboard and Phonepad settings

Indexterm: "keyboard"  
 Sub-indexterm: "settings"  
 Indexterm: "language"  
 Sub-indexterm: "writing"

You can select settings for the on-screen keyboard and the Phonepad, such as writing language and automatic correction.

GUID	GUID-3F81FB45-0DDC-4DE9-A7C4-8028057256A6
Title	Keyboard/keypad settings
Changes	Valid from eDream 4.0.
Version	2
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released*

### To access the on-screen keyboard and Phonepad settings

- 1 When you enter text using the on-screen keyboard or Phonepad, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-TEXTINPUT-NUMBERS-SYMBOLS or  ID: ICN-SONY-TEXTINPUT-NUMBERS-HORIZONTAL.
- 2 Tap  ID: ICN-SONY-MENU-SETTINGS, then tap **Keyboard settings** [textinput\_strings\_input\_options\_menu\_item\_personalize].

GUID	GUID-5AA8DA1C-44F4-4634-AF38-A2945CA7C238
Title	To access the on-screen keyboard and Phonepad settings
Changes	Valid for Nozomi ICS; operation steps changes; text changes made
Version	4
Author	WangT
Status	Released*

## To add a writing language for text input

- 1 When you enter text using the on-screen keyboard or Phonepad, tap **123** **ID: ICN-SONY-TEXTINPUT-NUMBERS-SYMBOLS** or **123** **ID: ICN-SONY-TEXTINPUT-NUMBERS-HORIZONTAL**.
- 2 Tap **X** **ID: ICN-SONY-MENU-SETTINGS**, then tap **Keyboard settings** [textinput\_strings\_input\_options\_menu\_item\_personalize].
- 3 Tap **Languages** [textinput\_strings\_settings\_language\_options] > **Writing languages** [textinput\_strings\_settings\_language] and mark the relevant checkboxes. Tap **OK** [button\_ok] to confirm.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-5EBAE597-1B8B-43E5-95D0-C1C8ABC27F9C
<i>Title</i>	To add a writing language to the on-screen keyboard or the Phonepad
<i>Changes</i>	for Nicki SS; change a label only; no text change
<i>Version</i>	13.1.1
<i>Author</i>	Gan Lu
<i>Status</i>	Draft

## Text input settings

When entering text using the on-screen keyboard or the Phonepad, you can access a text input settings menu that helps you set options for text prediction, automatic spacing and quick fixes. For example, you can decide how word options are presented and how words get corrected as you type. You can also set the text input application to remember new words that you write.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-2FCD6D60-C03C-4055-90C7-97DC630B64B0
<i>Title</i>	Text input settings
<i>Changes</i>	Device term change
<i>Version</i>	5
<i>Author</i>	Gan Lu
<i>Status</i>	Released

## To change the text input settings

- 1 When you enter text using the on-screen keyboard or the Phonepad, tap **123** **ID: ICN-SONY-TEXTINPUT-NUMBERS-SYMBOLS** or **123** **ID: ICN-SONY-TEXTINPUT-NUMBERS-HORIZONTAL**.
- 2 Tap **X** **ID: ICN-SONY-MENU-SETTINGS**, then tap **Keyboard settings** [textinput\_strings\_input\_options\_menu\_item\_personalize] > **Text input settings** [textinput\_strings\_settings\_quick\_text] and select the relevant settings.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-B505E8A0-AD82-4568-90AD-EC857B2CCDB0
<i>Title</i>	To change text input settings
<i>Changes</i>	for Hayabusa; add an icon on step 2
<i>Version</i>	5
<i>Author</i>	Gan Lu
<i>Status</i>	Released*

## Entering text using voice input

Indexterm: "voice input"  
Indexterm: "voice recognition"

When you enter text, you can use the voice input function instead of typing the words. Just speak the words that you want to enter. Voice input is an experimental technology from Google™, and is available for a number of languages and regions.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-3948A877-17B6-4759-9BFC-0EFCA283BC8B
<i>Title</i>	Entering text using voice input
<i>Changes</i>	for Taoshan; remove the note
<i>Version</i>	2
<i>Author</i>	Gan Lu
<i>Status</i>	Released

### To enable voice input

- 1 When you enter text using the on-screen keyboard or the Phonepad, tap **123** **ID: ICN-SONY-TEXTINPUT-NUMBERS-SYMBOLS** or **123** **ID: ICN-SONY-TEXTINPUT-NUMBERS-HORIZONTAL**.
- 2 Tap **X** **ID: ICN-SONY-MENU-SETTINGS**, then tap **Keyboard settings** [textinput\_strings\_input\_options\_menu\_item\_personalize].
- 3 Mark the **Google voice typing key** [textinput\_strings\_settings\_voice\_input\_start\_from\_keyboard] checkbox.
- 4 Press **↵** **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-AND-BACK** to save your settings. A microphone icon **ID: ICN-SONY-VOICE-INPUT-MIC-ONLY** appears on your on-screen keyboard or Phonepad.

GUID	GUID-60824615-DA86-4535-89BA-E47AAEC235A1
Title	To enable voice input
Changes	update for FAQs: add a conditon for icon; no other changes;
Version	3.1.1
Author	Vera Qu
Status	Released

### To enter text using voice input

- 1 Open the on-screen keyboard or the Phonepad.
- 2 If **ID: ICN-SONY-VOICE-INPUT-MIC-ONLY** is available, tap it. If not, touch and hold the input language key, for example, **EN** **ID: ICN-SONY-VOICE-INPUT-LANG-MIC**.
- 3 When **ID: ICN-SONY-VOICE-INPUT-MIC-CIRCLE** appears, speak to enter text. When you're finished, tap **ID: ICN-SONY-VOICE-INPUT-MIC-CIRCLE** again. The suggested text appears.
- 4 Edit the text manually if necessary.

GUID	GUID-4D762661-CFA9-4D74-9134-B58D18FEECFC
Title	To enter text using voice input
Changes	for Taoshan; remove step 1
Version	5
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released*

## Customising your device

You can adjust several device settings to suit your own needs. For example, you can change the language, add a personal ringtone, or change the screen brightness.

GUID	GUID-D9CF5557-AC85-4B4C-BEF7-A7B1BF31128F
Title	Customising your phone
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	2
Author	LisaY
Status	Released*

### Adjusting the volume

Indexterm: "volume"  
Sub-indexterm: "key"  
Indexterm: "silent mode"

You can adjust the ringtone volume for incoming calls and notifications as well as for music and video playback.

GUID	GUID-96B4FB24-5A76-42F9-9F7C-3804DF486237
Title	Adjusting the volume
Changes	Device Term Change from Odin
Version	2
Author	LisaY
Status	Released*

### To adjust the ring volume with the volume key

- Press the volume key up or down.

GUID	GUID-56F76480-7BEC-4AEA-A7A0-D5C62695A7F4
Title	To adjust the ring volume with the volume key
Changes	Valid for Robyn & Mimmi. Valid for eDream 3.0.
Version	2



Author	Komall
Status	Released

### To adjust the media playing volume with the volume key

- When playing music or watching video, press the volume key up or down.





GUID	GUID-B0DBCBEA-A5CE-42D1-A138-9B6E57FA84B9
Title	To adjust the media playing volume with the volume keys
Changes	Valid for Android Rachael. Valid for eDream 3.0.
Version	1
Author	SophieJ
Status	Released

### Adjusting the sound settings

You can adjust several sound settings. For example, you can set your device to silent mode so that it doesn't ring when you're in a meeting.






GUID	GUID-F97936DD-6D15-45A6-B517-7635755366D5
Title	Adjusting the sound settings
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	2
Author	LisaY
Status	Released*

### To set your device to vibrate mode

- Press the volume key down until  ID: ICN-SONY-STATUSBAR-VIBRATE-ON appears in the status bar.
-  You can also press and hold down the power key  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-AND-POWER-K90 and then tap  ID: ICN-SONY-STATUSBAR-VIBRATE-ON in the menu that opens to set your device to vibrate mode.


GUID	GUID-3030B405-90E5-45F2-A0F7-30F1B3C9937D
Title	To set the phone to vibrate mode
Changes	Device Term Change and steps change for Odin
Version	3
Author	LisaY
Status	Released

### To set your device to silent mode

- Press the volume key down until the device vibrates and  ID: ICN-SONY-STATUSBAR-VIBRATE-ON appears in the status bar.
  - Press the volume key down again.  ID: ICN-SONY-ICS-SOUND-SILENCT appears in the status bar.
-  You can also press and hold down the power key  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-AND-POWER-K90 and then tap  ID: ICN-SONY-ICS-SOUND-SILENCT in the menu that opens to set your device to silent mode.

GUID	GUID-DFB6F5BB-15B2-49A2-B023-828A4852DD0A
Title	To set the phone to silent and vibrating mode
Changes	steps change for huashan
Version	11
Author	LisaY
Status	Released*

### To set your device to vibrate and ring mode

- From your Home screen `[homescreen_strings_application_name_txt]`, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- Find and tap **Settings** `[settings_label_launcher]` > **Sound** `[sound_settings]`.
- Mark the **Vibrate when ringing** `[vibrate_when_ringing_title]` checkbox.

GUID	GUID-238E06D2-6988-439A-8711-90ED73016194
Title	To set the phone to vibrate and ring mode
Changes	Device Term Change and one label name change
Version	2
Author	LisaY
Status	Released

## Time and date

Indexterm: "time"  
Indexterm: "date"  
Sub-indexterm: "format"

You can change the time and date on your device.

GUID	GUID-D9FE3D48-1528-4315-BFF7-BFB227CAB4C0
Title	Time and date
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	2
Author	LisaY
Status	Released

### To set the date manually

- 1 From the Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] > **Date & time** [date\_and\_time\_settings\_title].
- 3 Unmark the **Automatic date & time** [date\_time\_auto] checkbox, if it is marked.
- 4 Tap **Set date** [date\_time\_set\_date].
- 5 Adjust the date by scrolling up and down.
- 6 Tap **Done** [date\_time\_done].

GUID	GUID-813CD57B-7A26-4E14-BBED-243BEC6F048F
Title	To set the date manually
Changes	only one label changed for Odin
Version	9
Author	LisaY
Status	Released*

### To set the time manually

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] > **Date & time** [date\_and\_time\_settings\_title].
- 3 Unmark the **Automatic date & time** [date\_time\_auto] checkbox if it is marked.
- 4 Tap **Set time** [date\_time\_set\_time].
- 5 Scroll up or down to adjust the hour and minute.
- 6 If applicable, scroll up to change **am** [udoc\_trans\_set\_time\_am] to **pm** [udoc\_trans\_set\_time\_pm], or vice versa.
- 7 Tap **Done** [date\_time\_done].

GUID	GUID-E9572FB8-BB60-4430-84D8-3F19D899681E
Title	To set the time manually
Changes	only one label changed for Odin
Version	13
Author	LisaY
Status	Released*

### To set the time zone

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] > **Date & time** [date\_and\_time\_settings\_title].
- 3 Unmark the **Automatic time zone** [zone\_auto] checkbox, if it is marked.
- 4 Tap **Select time zone** [date\_time\_set\_timezone].
- 5 Select an option.

GUID	GUID-0C804200-55DD-4779-BB20-7445141EC74C
Title	To set the time zone
Changes	ICS update
Version	5
Author	Xiaxin Li
Status	Released*


## Ringtone settings

Indexterm: "notification"  
Sub-indexterm: "ringtone"  
Indexterm: "vibration"

GUID GUID-36AE80F9-AAA9-408B-A8AE-5E58014B7377


<i>Title</i>	Ringtone settings - heading
<i>Changes</i>	Valid for Robyn & Mimmi. Valid for eDream 3.0
<i>Version</i>	2
<i>Author</i>	Komall
<i>Status</i>	Released

### To set a ringtone

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label\_launcher] > Sound [sound\_settings] > Phone ringtone [ringtone\_title] .
- 3 Select a ringtone.
- 4 Tap Done [gui\_done\_txt] .


<i>GUID</i>	GUID-2EB51A75-25CA-45E2-8D75-C0A2C484EC07
<i>Title</i>	To set a phone ringtone
<i>Changes</i>	Device Term Change
<i>Version</i>	9
<i>Author</i>	LisaY
<i>Status</i>	Released

### To enable touch tones

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label\_launcher] > Sound [sound\_settings] .
- 3 Mark the Dial pad touch tones [dtmf\_tone\_enable\_title] and Touch sounds [sound\_effects\_enable\_title] checkboxes.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-8D4FF0B8-3A81-46F0-AE74-031B501F394E
<i>Title</i>	To enable touch tones
<i>Changes</i>	update the label Sound
<i>Version</i>	7
<i>Author</i>	Xiaxin Li
<i>Status</i>	Released*

### To select the notification sound

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label\_launcher] > Sound [sound\_settings] > Default notification [notification\_sound\_title] .
- 3 Select the sound to be played when notifications arrive.
- 4 Tap Done [gui\_done\_txt] .

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-2DC47BDA-6F13-480C-A3C6-10F11ADDE021
<i>Title</i>	To select a notification ringtone
<i>Changes</i>	for Odin Yuga title updated according to label changed to "Notification sound"
<i>Version</i>	10
<i>Author</i>	LisaY
<i>Status</i>	Released*

## Screen settings


<i>Indexterm:</i>	"brightness"
<i>Indexterm:</i>	"screen"
<i>GUID</i>	GUID-EF960369-662D-46B3-9190-3ACD92FFE448
<i>Title</i>	Screen settings - heading
<i>Changes</i>	Valid for Robyn. Valid for eDream 3.0. Changed index marker
<i>Version</i>	2
<i>Author</i>	Komall
<i>Status</i>	Released

### To adjust the screen brightness

<i>Indexterm:</i>	"LCD backlight control"
-------------------	-------------------------

Indexterm: "brightness"

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] > **Display** [display\_settings\_title] > **Brightness** [brightness].
- 3 Drag the slider to adjust the brightness.
- 4 Tap **OK** [ok].

 The brightness level affects your battery performance. For tips on how to improve battery performance, see *Improving battery performance*.

GUID	GUID-6B929979-C7E3-45FB-85E0-C4A4BB05388A
Title	To adjust the screen brightness
Changes	for Odin Yuga Xperia Care removing the cross reference only no other text change
Version	8.1.1
Author	LisaY
Status	Released


### To set the screen to vibrate

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] > **Sound** [sound\_settings].
- 3 Mark the **Vibrate on touch** [haptic\_feedback\_enable\_title] checkbox. The screen now vibrates when you tap soft keys and certain applications.

GUID	GUID-C6A8795B-B37A-4FD6-8AE9-1CE841DFA98E
Title	To set the screen to vibrate
Changes	update the label Sound
Version	5
Author	Xiixin Li
Status	Released

### To adjust the idle time before the screen turns off

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] > **Display** [display\_settings\_title] > **Sleep** [screen\_time-out].
- 3 Select an option.

 To turn off the screen quickly, briefly press the power key **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-AND-POWER-K90**.

GUID	GUID-76BAB77B-B3AF-421C-8D41-F7F3D7CEBFA6
Title	To adjust the idle time before the screen turns off
Changes	ICS update
Version	6
Author	Xiixin Li
Status	Released




## Language settings

Indexterm: "language"

You can select a default language for your device and change it again at a later time.

GUID	GUID-E1D54EB1-8E02-4EA8-B64D-F1D56D4EF18B
Title	Phone language
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	2
Author	LisaY
Status	Released

## To change the language

- 1 From the **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
  - 2 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] > **Language & input** [language\_settings] > **Language** [language\_picker\_title] .
  - 3 Select an option.
  - 4 Tap **OK** [button\_ok] .
- ! If you select the wrong language and cannot read the menu texts, find and tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-APP-SETTINGS**. Then select the text beside  **ID: ICN-SONY-SETTINGS-LANGUAGE** and select the first entry in the menu that opens. You can then select the language you want.

GUID	GUID-78FDB03D-5A9A-4DD3-B1EB-554524E573A7
Title	To change the phone language
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	11
Author	LisaY
Status	Released

## Airplane mode

Indexterm: "Airplane mode"


Indexterm: "Flight mode - See Airplane mode"


In Airplane mode, the network and radio transceivers are turned off to prevent disturbance to sensitive equipment. However, you can still play games, listen to music, watch videos and other content, as long as all this content is saved on your memory card or internal storage. You can also be notified by alarms, if alarms are activated.

- 💡 Turning on Airplane mode reduces battery consumption.

GUID	GUID-4592770A-6B42-477E-9A27-8326386B4FC0
Title	Airplane mode
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	5
Author	LisaY
Status	Released

## To turn on Airplane mode

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL** .
- 2 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] > **More...** [radio\_controls\_title] .
- 3 Mark the **Airplane mode** [airplane\_mode] checkbox.

- 💡 You can also press and hold down the power key  **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-AND-POWER-K90** and then select **Airplane mode** [airplane\_mode] in the menu that opens.

GUID	GUID-0D75D33F-E108-41F8-B61A-F27882DA3E55
Title	To turn on Flight mode
Changes	Device Term Change and rewrite the tip to avoid using the "phone options" label
Version	10
Author	LisaY
Status	Released

## Enhancing the sound output

You can enhance the sound output that comes from the speakers in your device using features such as Clear Phase™ and xLOUD™ technology.


GUID	GUID-91BE04C9-56A8-4A40-A15A-348947A469C8
Title	Enhancing the sound quality
Changes	
Version	1
Author	LisaY
Status	Released

## Using Clear Phase™ technology

Use Clear Phase™ technology from Sony to automatically adjust the sound quality coming from your device's internal speakers and get a cleaner, more natural sound.

GUID	GUID-48A17031-9A20-4C8C-9A02-0ACA60316D37
Title	Using Clear Phase™ technology
Changes	
Version	1
Author	LisaY
Status	Released

### To enhance the speaker sound quality using Clear Phase™

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label\_launcher] > Sound [sound\_settings].
- 3 Mark the Clear Phase™ [udoc\_no\_trans\_clear\_phase] checkbox.

! The activation of the Clear Phase™ feature has no effect on voice communication applications.


GUID	GUID-DA49322A-6A65-4A9F-BCD3-C4E5F450AEDF
Title	To enhance the sound quality of the speaker using Clear Phase™
Changes	remove "For example... voice call" in the tip for pollux windy
Version	3
Author	LisaY
Status	Released

## Using xLOUD™ technology

Use xLOUD™ audio filter technology from Sony to enhance the speaker volume without sacrificing quality. Get a more dynamic sound as you listen to your favourite songs.

GUID	GUID-9BE06EDA-D4B0-41CC-9562-D89EBDDA4B01
Title	Using xLOUD™ technology
Changes	
Version	1
Author	LisaY
Status	Released

### To enhance the speaker volume using xLOUD™

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label\_launcher] > Sound [sound\_settings].
- 3 Mark the xLOUD™ [xLOUD] checkbox.

! The activation of the xLOUD™ feature has no effect on voice communication applications.

GUID	GUID-DADE3E84-AFBD-453C-A218-747C2077F534
Title	To enhance the speaker loudness using xLOUD™
Changes	remove "For example... voice call" in the tip for pollux windy
Version	5
Author	LisaY
Status	Released

## Memory

You can save content to your device's internal storage and to a memory card.

GUID	GUID-22B2F18B-DFF0-4F4E-9917-D71E95288CE9
Title	Memory
Changes	From Odin and Yuga: remove application memory; only keep internal memory and memory card
Version	6
Author	WangT
Status	Released

## Memory card

Your device supports a microSD™ memory card, which is used for storing content. This type of card can also be used as a portable memory card with other compatible devices.

- ! You may have to purchase a memory card separately.

GUID	GUID-82618BF1-CEB4-4D17-9849-F6DC73B15314
Title	Memory card
Changes	For Odin and Yuga: remove the note
Version	5
Author	WangT
Status	Released

## Formatting the memory card

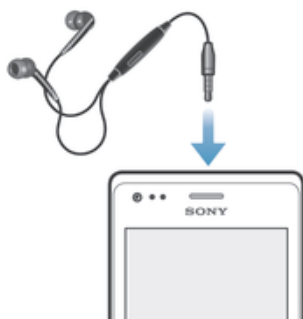
You can format the memory card in your device, for example, to free up memory. This means that you erase all data on the card.

- ! All content on the memory card gets erased when you format it. Make sure you make backups of everything you want to save before formatting the memory card. To back up your content, you can copy it to your computer. For more information, refer to the chapter *Connecting your device to a computer* on page 186.

GUID	GUID-27E17DFC-86F3-4FAE-AC9E-3C1E0009971A
Title	Formatting the memory card
Changes	Created only for termchange
Version	3
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released

## Using a headset

Indexterm: "headset"  
Indexterm: "music"



ID: ILL-SONY-13NY-HEADPHONES

- ! Use the accessories provided with your device, or other compatible accessories, for optimal performance.

GUID	GUID-2815B6DC-4B35-4D59-AB4C-5200E6AFD31C
Title	Stereo portable handsfree
Changes	Created for termchange only
Version	6
Author	WangT
Status	Released

### To use a headset

Indexterm: "headset"  
Sub-indexterm: "using"  
Indexterm: "music"

Sub-indexterm: "using a headset"

- 1 Connect the headset to your device.
  - 2 To answer a call, press the call handling key.
  - 3 To end the call, press the call handling key.
- ! If a headset is not included with the device, you may purchase one separately.
- 💡 If you are listening to music, the music stops when you answer a call and resumes after you end the call.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-804D9F4A-FDEA-40BE-BC7D-C6C3CE8DF02B
<i>Title</i>	To use a handsfree
<i>Changes</i>	Created for termchange only
<i>Version</i>	6
<i>Author</i>	CynthiaH
<i>Status</i>	Released

## Internet and messaging settings


Indexterm: "Internet"  
 Sub-indexterm: "settings"  
 Indexterm: "settings"  
 Sub-indexterm: "Internet"  
 Indexterm: "settings"  
 Sub-indexterm: "messaging"  
 Sub-indexterm: "MMS"  
 Indexterm: "messages"  
 Sub-indexterm: "settings"  
 Indexterm: "Multimedia Messaging Service (MMS)"  
 Sub-indexterm: "settings"  
 Indexterm: "download"  
 Sub-indexterm: "Internet settings"

To send text and multimedia messages and to access the Internet, you must have a mobile data connection and the correct settings. There are different ways to get these settings:

- For most mobile networks and operators, Internet and messaging settings come preinstalled on your device. You can then start using the Internet and send messages right away.
- In some cases you will get the option to download Internet and messaging settings the first time you turn on your device. It is also possible to download these settings later from the **Settings** [\[settings\\_label\\_launcher\]](#) menu.
- You can manually add and change Internet and network settings on your device at any time. Contact your network operator for detailed information about Internet and messaging settings.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-E108490D-17EF-4989-95D0-DB1F6F93AD07
<i>Title</i>	Internet and messaging settings
<i>Changes</i>	Update for Term change from phone to device
<i>Version</i>	7
<i>Author</i>	PanL
<i>Status</i>	Released

### To download Internet and messaging settings

- 1 From your Home screen [\[homescreen\\_strings\\_application\\_name\\_txt\]](#), tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap **Settings** [\[settings\\_label\\_launcher\]](#) > **Xperia™** [\[sonyericsson\\_settings\\_title\]](#) > **Internet settings** [\[r2r\\_settings\\_download\\_title\\_txt\]](#).
- 3 Tap **Accept** [\[r2r\\_strings\\_cost\\_button\\_accept\\_txt\]](#).

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-86823E16-0E31-4A88-AD3F-6BAFB84C490E
<i>Title</i>	To download Internet and messaging settings
<i>Changes</i>	added the last step based on v5 for Odin and Yuga
<i>Version</i>	8
<i>Author</i>	MikeCao
<i>Status</i>	Released



## To reset the default Internet settings

- 1 From the Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL .
- 2 Tap **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] > **More...** [radio\_controls\_title] > **Mobile networks** [network\_settings\_title] > **Access Point Names** [ph\_apn\_settings] .
- 3 Tap ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU .
- 4 Tap **Reset to default** [menu\_restore] .

GUID	GUID-C806ACFF-830E-4A1B-8232-CA132C88AE40
Title	To reset to the default Internet settings
Changes	only changed the word press to tap for OdinYuga
Version	7
Author	MikeCao
Status	Released

## Access Point Names (APNs)

An APN is used to establish data connections between your device and the Internet. The APN defines which type of IP address to use, which security methods to invoke, and which fixed-end connections to use. Checking the APN is useful when you cannot access the Internet, have no data connection, or cannot send or receive multimedia messages.

GUID	GUID-31CA14E0-F62F-48B1-AC9C-5E907E30A153
Title	Access Point Names (APNs)
Changes	Update for Term Change phone to device
Version	2
Author	PanL
Status	Released

## To view the current APN

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL .
  - 2 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] > **More...** [radio\_controls\_title] > **Mobile networks** [network\_settings\_title] .
  - 3 Tap **Access Point Names** [apn\_settings] .
- ! If you have several available connections, the active network connection is indicated by a marked button.

GUID	GUID-D3CA1D1D-9D77-409E-B090-A9F34E50E7C4
Title	To view the current Access Point Name (APN)
Changes	From Mesona; only update the heading to use the acronym because a concept topic about APN is added.
Version	6
Author	Tan Nellie
Status	Released

## To add Internet settings manually

- 1 From the Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL .
- 2 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] > **More...** [radio\_controls\_title] > **Mobile networks** [network\_settings\_title] > **Access Point Names** [apn\_settings] .
- 3 Tap ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU .
- 4 Tap **New APN** [menu\_new] .
- 5 Tap **Name** [apn\_name] and enter the name of the network profile that you want to create.
- 6 Tap **APN** [apn\_apn] and enter the access point name.
- 7 Enter all other information required by your network operator.
- 8 Tap ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU , then tap **Save** [menu\_save] .

GUID	GUID-32B23CC9-D90A-4769-AC96-E84045CC67B5
Title	To configure Internet settings manually
Changes	removed an icon based on v9 for Odin and Yuga
Version	12
Author	MikeCao
Status	Released

## Controlling data usage

Indexterm: "settings"  
Sub-indexterm: "data usage"  
Indexterm: "data traffic"

Keep track of and control the amount of data transferred to and from your device during a given period. For example, you can set data usage warnings and limits for your device to avoid additional charges. You can also limit the amount of data used by individual applications.

- ! Adjusting data usage settings can help you keep greater control over data usage but cannot guarantee the prevention of additional charges.

GUID	GUID-C0566A1E-7656-4AA0-83CF-B16974F69C4C
Title	Optimising data usage
Changes	Update for Term change from phone to device
Version	3
Author	PanL
Status	Released

### To access data usage settings

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] > **Data usage** [account\_settings\_data\_usage] .

GUID	GUID-4AA02A5A-A8F4-4BD6-B3B2-4065096178D2
Title	To access data usage settings
Changes	For Tapioca; For newly added data usage feature
Version	1
Author	Tan Nellie
Status	Released

### To turn data traffic on or off

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] > **Data usage** [account\_settings\_data\_usage] .
- 3 To turn data traffic on or off, tap the on-off switch beside **Mobile data** [data\_usage\_enable\_mobile] accordingly.

- 💡 You can also turn data traffic on or off by marking or unmarking the **Mobile data traffic** [data\_enabled] checkbox under **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] > **More...** [radio\_controls\_title] > **Mobile networks** [network\_settings\_title] .


GUID	GUID-AF0FB16B-F83D-452C-B097-C0BB9FC06865
Title	To enable mobile data
Changes	Nypon JB TRS update from version 2 (note added with a condition for UG use only)
Version	3
Author	Aiping
Status	Released

### To set a data usage warning

- 1 Make sure that you have turned on data traffic.
- 2 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 3 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] > **Data usage** [account\_settings\_data\_usage] .
- 4 To set the warning level, drag the lines to the desired values. You receive a warning notification when the amount of data traffic approaches the level you set.


GUID	GUID-E984931A-1304-4ADC-93A5-1CA4FAB17CBE
Title	To set a level for data usage warning
Changes	For Tapioca; for the newly added data usage feature.
Version	1
Author	Tan Nellie
Status	Released

### To set a data usage limit

- 1 Make sure that you have turned on data traffic.
  - 2 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
  - 3 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label\_launcher] > Data usage [account\_settings\_data\_usage] .
  - 4 Mark the Set mobile data limit [data\_usage\_disable\_mobile\_limit] checkbox if it is not marked, then tap OK [button\_ok] .
  - 5 To set the data usage limit, drag the lines to the desired values.
- ! Once your data usage reaches the set limit, data traffic on your device will be turned off automatically.

GUID	GUID-387685B1-AC66-41E5-91FD-BAB3268E5AAF
Title	To set data usage limit
Changes	Update for Term change from phone to device
Version	2
Author	PanL
Status	Released

### To control the data usage of individual applications

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
  - 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label\_launcher] > Data usage [account\_settings\_data\_usage] .
  - 3 Find and tap the desired application.
  - 4 Mark the Restrict background data [data\_usage\_app\_restrict\_background] checkbox.
  - 5 To access more specific settings for the application, tap View app settings [data\_usage\_app\_settings] and make the desired changes.
- ! Specific settings for an application may not always be accessible.

- 💡 The performance of individual applications may be affected if you change the related data usage settings.


GUID	GUID-16A3F307-2E86-443A-A431-7F192F049F2D
Title	To change data usage settings by application
Changes	removed description about changing the "data usage limit" or "restrict all data traffic" from Taoshan
Version	2
Author	MikeCao
Status	Released

## Mobile network settings

Your device automatically switches between mobile networks depending on what mobile networks are available in different areas. You can also manually set your device to use a particular mobile network mode, for example, WCDMA or GSM.

GUID	GUID-03604570-8FDB-4743-A698-1DD36415FCED
Title	Network settings
Changes	Update for Term change from phone to device
Version	6
Author	PanL
Status	Released*


### To select a network type

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label\_launcher] > More... [radio\_controls\_title] > Mobile networks [network\_settings\_title] .
- 3 Tap Network Mode [preferred\_network\_mode\_title] .
- 4 Select a network type.

GUID	GUID-D26F6D09-E741-4272-A36B-876F5D93772A
Title	To select network mode
Changes	For Tapioca DSDS; text changed; change the function-related description in the note
Version	3.1.1


Author	Tan Nellie
Status	Released

### To select another network manually

- 1 From the Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
  - 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label\_launcher] > More... [radio\_controls\_title] > Mobile networks [network\_settings\_title] > Service providers [networks] .
  - 3 Tap Search mode [clh\_settings\_search\_mode] > Manual [clh\_settings\_manual\_selection] .
  - 4 Select a network.
- ! If you select a network manually, your device will not search for other networks, even if you move out of range of the manually selected network.

GUID	GUID-D7ED045F-09E8-437A-B0FA-7F20B36A7B9E
Title	To select another network manually
Changes	Update for Term change from phone to device
Version	10
Author	PanL
Status	Released

### To activate automatic network selection

- 1 From the Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label\_launcher] > More... [radio\_controls\_title] > Mobile networks [network\_settings\_title] > Service providers [networks] .
- 3 Tap Search mode [clh\_settings\_search\_mode] > Automatic [select\_automatically] .

GUID	GUID-9A348BA0-79C7-43D2-B4D1-CD1673E55076
Title	To activate automatic network selection
Changes	From Togari; no text changed; only merge the last two step into one step.
Version	7
Author	Tan Nellie
Status	Draft


## Turning off data traffic

You can disable all data connections over mobile networks to avoid any unwanted data downloads and synchronisations. Contact your network operator if you need detailed information about your subscription plan and data traffic charges.

- 💡 When data traffic is turned off, you can still use Wi-Fi® and Bluetooth™ connections. You can also send and receive multimedia messages.

GUID	GUID-742544F3-883A-46CC-AEB8-A348267E78B6
Title	Turning off data traffic
Changes	Update for Term change from phone to device
Version	6
Author	PanL
Status	Released

### To turn off all data traffic

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label\_launcher] > More... [radio\_controls\_title] > Mobile networks [network\_settings\_title] .
- 3 Unmark the Mobile data traffic [data\_enabled] checkbox.

GUID	GUID-CC611F89-1392-4026-8612-ED7FF9CE6536
Title	To turn off all data traffic
Changes	Label changed
Version	5
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released


## Data roaming

Some network operators allow mobile data connections via mobile networks when you are outside of your home network (roaming). Note that data transmission charges may apply. Contact your network operator for more information.

- ! Applications may sometimes use the Internet connection in your home network without any notification, for example, when sending search and synchronisation requests. Additional charges may apply when such Internet connections are established while you are roaming. Consult your network operator for more information.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-73201F09-74A4-4501-8A3D-A733BDC1C923
<i>Title</i>	Data roaming
<i>Changes</i>	Update from Tsubasa Gina LTE network description is rewritten
<i>Version</i>	5
<i>Author</i>	PanL
<i>Status</i>	Released

### To activate data roaming

- 1 From the Home screen [\[homescreen\\_strings\\_application\\_name\\_txt\]](#), tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
  - 2 Find and tap **Settings** [\[settings\\_label\\_launcher\]](#) > **More...** [\[radio\\_controls\\_title\]](#) > **Mobile networks** [\[network\\_settings\\_title\]](#).
  - 3 Mark the **Data roaming** [\[roaming\]](#) checkbox.
- ! You can't activate data roaming when data connections have been deactivated.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-C60097AE-0FB1-41C4-B18F-1FA5C7A7B8CC
<i>Title</i>	To activate data roaming
<i>Changes</i>	Add conditions for FAQ
<i>Version</i>	7
<i>Author</i>	Vera Qu
<i>Status</i>	Released

# Google Play™

GUID	GUID-C30DF276-0F47-43A3-98AB-5696A071AD32
Title	Google Play - heading only
Changes	
Version	1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released

## Getting started with Google Play™

Open Google Play™ and enter a world of applications and games. You can browse these applications and games through different categories. You can also rate an application or game and send feedback on it.


To use Google Play™, you need to have a Google™ account. See *To set up a Google™ account in your phone* on page 96.

- ! Google Play™ may not be available in all countries or regions

GUID	GUID-948C2660-2BA8-4007-BE93-4192F4B8B60A
Title	Getting started with Google Play™
Changes	Valid for Tapioca Phoenix eDream 6.0 Aoba ROW Nozomi ICS and onwards Label updated and plain text Android Market changed to Google Play only No text change and no need review
Version	9
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

## To open Google Play™

Indexterm: "Android Market™ - See Google Play™"  
Indexterm: "Google Play™"

- 1 From the Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap Play Store [android-market-market].

GUID	GUID-A6466E9C-56BD-433F-BFEC-33CBCD2B6725
Title	To open Google Play
Changes	Valid for Tapioca Phoenix eDream 6.0 Aoba ROW 6 Nozomi ICS and onwards Index updated only No need review
Version	7
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

## Downloading from Google Play™

You can download all kinds of applications from Google Play™, including free applications.

GUID	GUID-49F15983-B569-4F3D-925B-068E32B35056
Title	Downloading from Android™ Market
Changes	Valid for Tapioca Phoenix eDream 6.0 Aoba ROW 6.0 STE Nypon Kumquat Pepper Nozomi ICS and onwards Plain text Android Market changed to Play Shop only No text change and no need review
Version	5
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

## Before you download applications

Before you start downloading from Google Play™, make sure that you have a working Internet connection.

Also, remember that you might incur data traffic charges when you download content to your phone. Contact your operator for more information.

GUID	GUID-03BC5C4C-F4A2-43E2-841B-112DBE3EE81B
Title	Before you download applications

<i>Changes</i>	Valid for Tapioca Phoenix eDream 6.0 Aoba ROW Nozomi ICS and onwards Plain text Android Market changed to Google Play only No text change and no need review
<i>Version</i>	2
<i>Author</i>	WangHerman
<i>Status</i>	Released*

### To download a free application

- 1 In Google Play™, find an item you wish to download by browsing categories, or by using the search function.
- 2 Tap the item to view its details, and follow the instructions to complete the installation.
- 3 If the application you want to download requires access to your data or control of any functions on your phone, an additional screen appears with details. Read this screen carefully because the functionality of your phone may be seriously affected if you proceed. Tap **OK** [ph\_ok] if you agree, or **Cancel** [cancel] if you wish to cancel the download.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-7F1229FC-3D9E-4AD7-B551-601E0A4FA6D0
<i>Title</i>	To download a free application
<i>Changes</i>	Valid for Tapioca Phoenix eDream 6.0 Aoba ROW Nozomi ICS and onwards Plain text Android Market changed to Google Play only No text change and no need review
<i>Version</i>	5
<i>Author</i>	WangHerman
<i>Status</i>	Released*


### To download a paid application

- 1 In Google Play™, find an item you wish to download by browsing categories, or by using the search function.
- 2 Tap the item to view its details, and follow the instructions in your phone to complete your purchase.
- 3 If the application you want to download requires access to your data or control of any functions on your phone, an additional screen appears with details. Read this screen carefully because the functionality of your phone may be seriously affected if you proceed. Tap **OK** [ph\_ok] if you agree, or **Cancel** [cancel] if you wish to cancel the download.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-177043C5-8E5C-422D-9FFA-F6589DA0B947
<i>Title</i>	To download a paid application
<i>Changes</i>	Valid for Tapioca Phoenix eDream 6.0 Aoba ROW Nozomi ICS and onwards Plain text Android Market changed to Google Play only No text change and no need review
<i>Version</i>	6
<i>Author</i>	WangHerman
<i>Status</i>	Released*

### To open a downloaded application

- 1 In Google Play™, press **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**, then tap **My Apps** [android-market-my-apps].
- 2 Tap the downloaded application.

 You can also access downloaded applications from the Application screen.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-EBFE0735-60B3-4E17-BE7F-C03345392F0F
<i>Title</i>	To open a downloaded application
<i>Changes</i>	Valid for Tapioca Phoenix eDream 6.0 Aoba ROW Nozomi ICS and onwards Plain text Android Market changed to Google Play only No text change and no need review
<i>Version</i>	5
<i>Author</i>	WangHerman
<i>Status</i>	Released


## Clearing your application data

You may sometimes need to clear data for an application. This might happen if, for example, the application memory becomes full, or you want to clear high scores for a

game. You might also want to erase incoming email, text and multimedia messages in some applications.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-EAF62666-1ACE-41A8-B75E-0BA17DE3F88D
<i>Title</i>	Clearing your application data
<i>Changes</i>	For Shakira and onwards
<i>Version</i>	1
<i>Author</i>	AnnE
<i>Status</i>	Released


### To clear all cache for an application

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] .
- 3 Tap **Apps** [applications\_settings] .
- 4 Tap the application for which you want to clear all cache.
- 5 Tap **Clear cache** [clear\_cache\_btn\_text] .

! It is not possible to clear the cache for some applications.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-223FC104-FDE6-4850-B2BD-9B392F63ABAB
<i>Title</i>	To clear all data for an application
<i>Changes</i>	Valid for eDream 4.1 ICS update Urushi Ayame Haida. Step 3 "Applications" changed to "Apps" and removed "Manage applications"
<i>Version</i>	7
<i>Author</i>	WangHerman
<i>Status</i>	Released*

### To delete an installed application

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label] .
- 3 Tap **Apps** [applications\_settings] .
- 4 Select the application that you want to delete.
- 5 Tap **Uninstall** [uninstall\_text] .

! It is not possible to delete some preinstalled applications.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-9CD7AFD4-1CA6-4816-9333-D43825F06633
<i>Title</i>	To delete an installed application
<i>Changes</i>	Valid for eDream 4.1 ICS update Urushi Ayame Haida. Step 3 "Applications" changed to "Apps" and removed "Manage applications"
<i>Version</i>	5
<i>Author</i>	WangHerman
<i>Status</i>	Released*

## Permissions


Some applications may need to access data, settings and various functions on your device in order to work properly. If so, then they need the relevant permissions from you. For example, a navigation application needs permissions to send and receive data traffic, and access your location.

Some applications might misuse their permissions by stealing or deleting data, or by reporting your location. Make sure you only install and give permissions to applications you trust.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-66ABAE3F-553A-4CC4-8ACA-88C9B976FF77
<i>Title</i>	Permissions
<i>Changes</i>	Updated from Togari and valid for all projects onwards Broken the whole paragraph into two paragraphs according to concept team's request No text change NO NEED REVIEW
<i>Version</i>	3
<i>Author</i>	WangHerman
<i>Status</i>	Draft



## To view permissions of an application

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label].
- 3 Tap Apps [applications\_settings].
- 4 Tap the desired application.
- 5 Scroll down to view the relevant details under Permissions [permissions\_label].

GUID	GUID-5CA82138-A0F8-465B-B505-E2EDD4879535
Title	To view permissions of an application
Changes	Valid for eDream 4.1 ICS update Urushi Ayame Haida. Step 3 "Applications" changed to "Apps" and removed "Manage applications"
Version	5
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

## Installing applications not from Google Play™

Installing applications of unknown or unreliable origin can damage your phone. By default, your phone is set to block such installations. However, you can change this setting and allow installations from unknown sources.

- ! Sony does not warrant or guarantee the performance of any third-party applications or content transferred via download or other interface to your phone. Similarly, Sony is not responsible for any damage or reduced performance of your phone attributable to the transfer of third-party content. Only use content from reliable sources. Contact the content provider if you have any questions or concerns.

GUID	GUID-4658ED14-9236-4B4B-80D8-EFB84089B731
Title	Allowing applications from sources other than Google Play™
Changes	Valid for Tapioca Phoenix eDream 6.0 Aoba ROW Nozomi ICS and onwards Plain text Android Market changed to Google Play only No text change and no need review
Version	9
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released*

## To allow the installation of applications not from Google Play™

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label] > Security [security\_settings\_title].
- 3 Mark the Unknown sources [install\_applications] checkbox.

GUID	GUID-1931F6D3-8F6E-4208-9D9E-C78CA2753904
Title	To allow the installation of applications from sources other than Google Play™
Changes	Valid for Tapioca Phoenix Nozomi ICS and onwards Plain text Android Market changed to Play Store only No text change and no need review
Version	8
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released*

# Calling

Indexterm: "telephony - See calls"	
Indexterm: "calls"	
GUID	GUID-71EA3573-EAE2-4B15-A2CF-DCED46EE7587
Title	Calling - heading only
Changes	Valid from Nypon ICS (justed remove the italics form of index terms)
Version	4
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

## Emergency calls



Indexterm: "calls"	
Sub-indexterm: "emergency"	
Indexterm: "SOS - See emergency numbers"	
Indexterm: "emergency numbers"	


Your device supports international emergency numbers, for example, 112 or 911.

You can normally use these numbers to make emergency calls in any country, with or without the SIM card inserted if you are within range of a network.

GUID	GUID-95D14376-6C16-4B4E-9B0D-8F78EFF123E6
Title	Emergency calls
Changes	Device term change
Version	6
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released


### To make an emergency call

- 1 From your Home screen `[homescreen_strings_application_name_txt]`, tap  `ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL`.
- 2 Find and Tap Phone `[launcherDialer]`.
- 3 Enter the emergency number and tap Call `[spb_strings_dialer_call_txt]`. To delete a number, tap  `ID: ICN-SONY-INPUT-DELETE`.

 You can make emergency calls when no SIM card is inserted or when outgoing calls are barred.

GUID	GUID-1C4DC7B4-8DD8-4046-82B6-4DB57A2FBB93
Title	To make an emergency call
Changes	Changed "You can make emergency calls when no SIM card is inserted or all outgoing calls are barred"
Version	7
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### To make an emergency call while the SIM card is locked

- 1 Tap Emergency call `[clh_emergency_enable_radio_dialog_title_txt]`.
- 2 Enter the emergency number and tap Call `[spb_strings_dialer_call_txt]`. To delete a number, tap  `ID: ICN-SONY-INPUT-DELETE`.

GUID	GUID-D5A8FEA8-E9B6-4234-8D05-ADDA04F5BC2B
Title	To make an emergency call while the SIM card is locked
Changes	Modify lable
Version	3
Author	MaLijia
Status	Released

## Making and receiving calls

You can make a call by manually dialling a phone number, by tapping a number saved in your contact list, or by tapping the phone number in your call log view. You can also use the smart dial feature to quickly find numbers from your contact list and call logs.

When you make a call, your device's main microphone works together with the second microphone to suppress noise and background sound.

- ! Do not cover the second microphone while you make a call.

GUID	GUID-73E2425E-2DE6-4B9F-BC0A-F9473A8208B4
Title	Call handling - heading
Changes	Changed the heading only no extra text changed due to comments from concept team
Version	7
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Draft

## Contacts [\[contactsList\]](#) Ongoing call handling overview

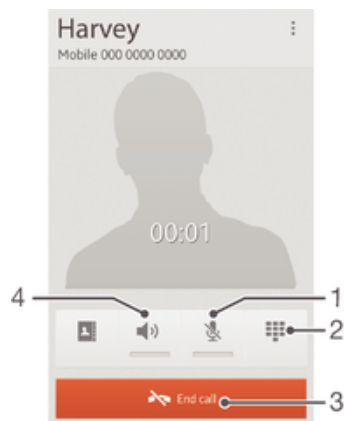


### ID: SCR-SONY-13TI-CALL HANDLING1

1	Answer a call
2	Decline a call

GUID	GUID-5E4AF474-9E9F-4344-8156-2C7B64C59E0F
Title	Ongoing call handling overview
Changes	
Version	1
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Draft

## Contacts [\[contactsList\]](#) Incoming call handling overview





### ID: SCR-SONY-13TI-CALL HANDLING2

1	Mute the microphone during a call
2	Enter numbers during a call
3	End a call
4	Turn on the loudspeaker during a call


GUID	GUID-D912EDDE-EAC1-4B36-BC45-CC568D8E32AC
Title	Incoming call handling overview
Changes	
Version	1
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Draft

### To make a call by dialling

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap Phone [launcherDialer] .
- 3 Enter the number of the recipient and tap Call [spb\_strings\_dialer\_call\_txt] . To delete a number, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-INPUT-DELETE.


GUID	GUID-4FE375CD-48B9-4D81-8DA9-730361EE3AEC
Title	To make a call
Changes	For eDream 4.0
Version	6
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released*

### To make a call using smart dial

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap Phone [launcherDialer] .
- 3 Use the dialpad to enter letters or numbers that correspond to the contact you want to call. As you enter each letter or number, a list of possible matches appears.
- 4 Tap the contact you want to call.


GUID	GUID-7A25E697-13EE-481C-89D0-229396708D57
Title	To make a call using smart dial
Changes	
Version	1
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### To make an international call

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap Phone [launcherDialer] .
- 3 Touch and hold 0 until a "+" sign appears.
- 4 Enter the country code, area code (without the first 0) and phone number, then tap Call [spb\_strings\_dialer\_call\_txt] .

GUID	GUID-AFD0943A-BF5A-4F5D-8FF0-0A30C3B98669
Title	To make an international call
Changes	for eDream 4.0.1 (The number" 0" is changed after discussion
Version	6
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### To reject a second call

- When you hear repeated beeps during a call, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-CALL-SLIDER-DISMISS.

GUID	GUID-20A61740-AB60-4D3D-BBF6-8191B6FEC058
Title	To reject a second call
Changes	Comments from TID. From Huashan,changed drag into tap also changed the icon.
Version	4
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released

### To change the ear speaker volume during a call

- Press the volume key up or down.

GUID	GUID-E0A64910-7B0A-4319-8169-9E7E9630ED50
Title	To change the ear speaker volume during a call
Changes	eSheep Rachael
Version	1
Author	OskarW
Status	Released

### To activate the screen during a call

- Briefly press  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-AND-POWER-K90.

GUID	GUID-9CB25B9D-B1B8-4A2C-B6B7-76163D97AB11
Title	To activate the screen during a call
Changes	Changed due to Ed comments just be more accurate
Version	4
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released

### To mute the ringtone for an incoming call

- When you receive the call, press the volume key.

GUID	GUID-166E8451-D0EE-4A20-8D11-A7DC0BBA7027
Title	To mute the ringtone for an incoming call
Changes	eSheep Rachael
Version	1
Author	OskarW
Status	Released*

## Rejecting calls

GUID	GUID-9CC9879B-B661-4EA1-A066-DA2827D97592
Title	Rejecting calls
Changes	Created it out due to comments from concept team
Version	1
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Draft

### Rejecting a call with a message

Indexterm: "calls"  
Sub-indexterm: "reject"

You can reject a call with a predefined message. When you reject a call with such a message, the message is automatically sent to the caller and saved on your device.

Six messages are predefined on your device. You can select from these predefined messages, which can also be edited if necessary.

GUID	GUID-07BBFB8F-49E0-4484-B2DC-E4BCD9CD758F
Title	Rejecting a call with a message
Changes	Device term change
Version	2
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### To reject a call with a predefined message

- Drag **Reject with message** [\[call\\_reject\\_call\\_with\\_message\]](#) upward, then select a message.


GUID	GUID-CAB1C7B1-044E-4072-BBAF-709C1E0FD0C3
Title	To reject a call with a message
Changes	
Version	1
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### To reject a second call with a predefined message

- When you hear repeated beeps during a call, drag **Reject with message** [\[call\\_reject\\_call\\_with\\_message\]](#) upward, then select a message.

GUID	GUID-C7B2AAC2-90FE-4C43-A847-EDD862442B84
Title	To reject a second call with a message
Changes	
Version	2
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

## To edit the message used to reject a call

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL .
- 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label\_launcher] > Call settings [call\_settings\_title] > Reject call with message [call\_settings\_reject\_call\_with\_message] .
- 3 Tap the message you want to edit, then make the necessary changes.
- 4 When you're done, tap OK [button\_ok] .

GUID	GUID-BD89ACAE-CE3B-4176-9AB1-961828375848
Title	To edit the message used to reject a call
Changes	changed a label id no need ed review
Version	3
Author	MikeCao
Status	Released


## Barring calls

Indexterm: "calls"  
Sub-indexterm: "diverting"  
Sub-indexterm: "barring"

You can bar all or certain categories of incoming and outgoing calls. When you use call barring for the first time, you need to enter your PUK (Personal Unblocking Key) and then a new password to activate the call barring function.

GUID	GUID-B96C42F8-041D-4CA5-9C24-FAB3231F9BF6
Title	Barring calls
Changes	
Version	1
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released




## To bar incoming or outgoing calls

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL .
- 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label\_launcher] > Call settings [call\_settings\_title] > Call blocking [labelCallBarring] .
- 3 Select an option.
- 4 Enter the password and tap Enable [enable] .

GUID	GUID-7004AA90-417E-4304-85B9-6EB502561939
Title	To bar incoming or outgoing calls
Changes	
Version	1
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released*


## Recent calls

Indexterm: "calls"  
Sub-indexterm: "log"  
Sub-indexterm: "missed"

In the call log, you can view missed  ID: ICN-SONY-CALL-LOG-HEADER-MISSED-CALL, received  ID: ICN-SONY-CALL-LOG-HEADER-INCOMING-CALL and dialled  ID: ICN-SONY-CALL-LOG-HEADER-OUTGOING-CALL calls.

GUID	GUID-40E5841D-C7A4-4B25-AC8D-3531B9D52AFC
Title	Recent calls
Changes	Comments from TID changed an icon only for huashan
Version	3
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released

## To view your missed calls

- 1 When you have missed a call,  ID: ICN-SONY-CALL-LOG-HEADER-MISSED-CALL appears in the status bar. Drag the status bar downwards.
- 2 Tap Missed call [notification\_missedCallTitle] .

GUID	GUID-590BA208-6CD8-42C2-9D38-C05755E3917B
Title	To view missed calls

Changes	Changed the varid for an icon only
Version	7
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released

### To show the call log

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap **ID: ICN-SONY-APP-DIALER** > **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**.
- 3 Tap **Show call log** [spb\_strings\_show\_call\_log\_txt].

GUID	GUID-ADDBBB5C-9B83-4C04-98D8-48FE46F95C39
Title	To show the call log
Changes	
Version	1
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### To call a number from your call log

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
  - 2 Find and tap **Phone** [launcherDialer]. The call log view appears on the upper part of the screen.
  - 3 To call a number directly, tap the number. To edit a number before calling, touch and hold the number, then tap **Edit number before call** [recentCalls\_editNumberBeforeCall].
- ! You can also call a number by tapping **ID: ICN-SONY-SMARTSEARCH-CALLLOG-DETAIL-BTN-NORMAL** > **Call back** [callBack].

GUID	GUID-06B252C0-D4D0-476C-ABA4-5D809E1F1615
Title	To call a number from the call log
Changes	for ICS Wave2 update (Changed the way to call the number)
Version	8
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### To add a number from the call log to your contacts

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap **Phone** [launcherDialer]. The call log view appears on the upper part of the screen.
- 3 Touch and hold the number, then tap **Add to Contacts** [recentCalls\_addToContact].
- 4 Tap the desired contact, or tap **Create new contact** [pickerNewContactHeader].
- 5 Edit the contact details and tap **Done** [menu\_done].

GUID	GUID-3511CFE2-B8CC-4CF9-93AC-53529E89BC56
Title	To add a number from the call log to your contacts
Changes	for ICS Wave 2 update (changed the way to view call log)
Version	7
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

## Voicemail


Indexterm: "voicemail"  
Indexterm: "answering service"

If your subscription includes a voicemail service, callers can leave voice messages for you when you can't answer calls. Your voicemail service number is normally saved on your SIM card. If not, you can get the number from your service provider and enter it manually.

GUID	GUID-C0B45CA8-3035-4A41-AF12-46F45200B8AA
Title	Voicemail
Changes	Valid for R800x(CDMA condition added)
Version	5
Author	PengLeon


Status	Released
--------	----------

### To enter your voicemail number

- 1 From the Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] > **Call settings** [call\_settings\_title] > **Voicemail** [general\_dialpad\_voicemail\_txt] > **Voicemail settings** [voicemail\_settings] > **Voicemail number** [voicemail\_settings\_number\_label] .
- 3 Enter your voicemail number.
- 4 Tap **OK** [ok] .

GUID	GUID-C89C34FD-27BE-4E69-A928-F67A90805CC9
Title	To enter your voicemail number
Changes	comments from TID added only one step in 2 no text changed
Version	5.1.1
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released

### To call your voicemail service

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap **Phone** [launcherDialer] .
- 3 Touch and hold **1**.

GUID	GUID-0C8C71F8-F089-4C9F-8CB4-AF024258D381
Title	To call your voicemail service
Changes	Remove incorrect usage of tag <b>
Version	7
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

## Multiple calls


Indexterm: "calls"  
Sub-indexterm: "multiple"

If you have activated call waiting, you can handle multiple calls at the same time. When it is activated, you will be notified by a beep if you receive another call.

GUID	GUID-BFBB9A5A-25E5-4E72-9841-247169DEEB7A
Title	Multiple calls
Changes	Changed title from More than one call to Multiple calls - From Robyn
Version	2
Author	OisinF
Status	Released


### To activate or deactivate call waiting

Indexterm: "calls"  
Sub-indexterm: "waiting"

- 1 From the Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label] > **Call settings** [call\_settings\_title] > **Additional settings** [additional\_gsm\_call\_settings] .
- 3 To activate or deactivate call waiting, tap **Call waiting** [labelCW] .

GUID	GUID-1A9F7171-AD1D-443F-B906-7C346F87C151
Title	To activate or deactivate call waiting
Changes	eDream 2.0 Robyn/Mimmi & Rachael
Version	3
Author	UlrikaK
Status	Released*

### To answer a second call and put the ongoing call on hold

- When you hear repeated beeps during a call, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-CALL-SLIDER-ANSWER.

GUID	GUID-7C422C9D-1720-407E-A0C8-6D8B8EB6B19F
Title	To answer a second call and put the ongoing call on hold
Changes	Comments from TID. From Huashan,changed drag into tap also changed the icon.



Version	4
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released


### To make a second call

- 1 During an ongoing call, tap **Dialpad** [ch\_large\_icbp\_dialpad\_txt] .
- 2 Enter the number of the recipient and tap **Call** [spb\_strings\_dialer\_call\_txt] .
- 3 The first call is put on hold.

💡 The same procedure applies to subsequent calls.

GUID	GUID-0CE0A4D3-CA04-4D27-B17F-8973082C4EF3
Title	To make a second call
Changes	label changed
Version	6
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### To switch between multiple calls

- To switch to another call and put the current call on hold, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-CALL-SLIDER-ANSWER.

GUID	GUID-1309D844-C17A-4A36-8E37-26A09CD358A2
Title	To switch between multiple calls
Changes	comments from TID for Huashan changed an icon only no extra text changed
Version	4
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released

## Setting up a conference call


Indexterm: "conference calls"

With a conference or multiparty call, you can have a joint conversation with two or more persons.

- ! For details on the number of participants you can add to a conference call, contact your network operator.

GUID	GUID-ED3A4BD7-2AAD-4A22-9486-AFBF100F1F0F
Title	Setting up a conference call
Changes	Created it out only changed the name no extra text changed due to comments from concept team
Version	4
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Draft

### To make a conference call

- 1 During an ongoing call, tap **Dialpad** [ch\_large\_icbp\_dialpad\_txt] .
- 2 Dial the number of the second participant and tap **Call** [spb\_strings\_dialer\_call\_txt] . After the second participant answers, the first participant is put on hold.
- 3 Tap  ID: ICN-SONY-CALL-CONFERENCE to add the second participant to the conference call.
- 4 Repeat steps 1 to 3 to add more call participants.

GUID	GUID-29B1365F-B898-4DD3-A624-19FFCDE9FC4B
Title	To make a conference call
Changes	label changed
Version	7
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

## To have a private conversation with a conference call participant

- 1 During an ongoing conference call, tap **{0} participants** [clh\_large\_conference\_call\_participants].
- 2 Tap the telephone number of the participant with whom you want to talk privately.
- 3 To end the private conversation and return to the conference call, tap **ID: ICN-SONY-CALL-CONFERENCE**.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-7FEE24C8-B5B3-4172-8A13-343441E63304
<i>Title</i>	To have a private conversation with a participant
<i>Changes</i>	Changed due to Ed comments only.so that things are as clear as possible.
<i>Version</i>	8
<i>Author</i>	CynthiaH
<i>Status</i>	Released

## To release a participant from a conference call

- 1 During an ongoing conference call, tap the button showing the number of participants. For example, tap **3 participants** [3\_participants] if there are three participants.
- 2 Tap **ID: ICN-SONY-CALL-ONGOING-HANGUP** next to the participant you want to release.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-317CBA11-E778-4F0B-B2F6-16BE76B17DAE
<i>Title</i>	To release a participant
<i>Changes</i>	For eDream 4.0 (End call icon changed)
<i>Version</i>	4
<i>Author</i>	PengLeon
<i>Status</i>	Released

## To end a conference call

- During the call, tap **ID: ICN-SONY-CALL-ONGOING-HANGUP**.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-B7DE81B4-2DAB-4D55-9A3B-EAACC2C86A9F
<i>Title</i>	To end a conference call
<i>Changes</i>	From Robyn
<i>Version</i>	2
<i>Author</i>	OisinF
<i>Status</i>	Released*

## Call settings

Indexterm: "calls"	
Sub-indexterm: "settings"	
Indexterm: "settings"	
Sub-indexterm: "call"	
<i>GUID</i>	GUID-25809A0F-E933-4AFD-ACC1-43091E006C84
<i>Title</i>	Call settings - heading
<i>Changes</i>	Generic
<i>Version</i>	1
<i>Author</i>	OskarW
<i>Status</i>	Released

## Forwarding calls

Indexterm: "calls"	
Sub-indexterm: "diverting"	
Sub-indexterm: "forwarding"	
You can forward calls, for example, to another phone number, or to an answering service.	
<i>GUID</i>	GUID-E1430643-8DEE-443C-8FD5-6DF310320AD0
<i>Title</i>	Forwarding calls
<i>Changes</i>	eSheep Rachael
<i>Version</i>	1
<i>Author</i>	OskarW
<i>Status</i>	Released

## To forward calls

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] > **Call settings** [call\_settings\_title] > **Call forwarding** [labelCF] .
- 3 Select an option.
- 4 Enter the number you want to forward the calls to, then tap **Enable** [enable] .

GUID	GUID-24FD3201-10EA-418F-9B73-240458B3EEC2
Title	To forward calls
Changes	label changed
Version	4
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released*

## To turn off call forwarding

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] > **Call settings** [call\_settings\_title] > **Call forwarding** [labelCF] .
- 3 Select an option, then tap **Disable** [disable] .

GUID	GUID-89805283-2629-4D50-B89E-914E3EE2BCEA
Title	To turn off call forwarding
Changes	label changed
Version	4
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released*

## Showing or hiding your phone number

You can select to show or hide your phone number on call recipients' devices when you call them.

GUID	GUID-32174486-684C-45E8-9877-5C21C6024A57
Title	Showing or hiding your phone number
Changes	From Robyn
Version	2
Author	OisinF
Status	Released*

## To show or hide your phone number

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] > **Call settings** [call\_settings\_title] > **Additional settings** [additional\_gsm\_call\_settings] > **Caller ID** [labelCallerId] .

GUID	GUID-A0B707E1-2F16-4FCC-8188-E5DEC180AF5C
Title	To show or hide your phone number
Changes	Valid for 4.0.1.1 ("Select an option" removed for it is not allowed to modify)
Version	6
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released*

## Restricting outgoing calls

Indexterm: "calls"  
Indexterm: "fixed dialling"

If you have received a PIN2 code from your service provider, you can use a list of Fixed Dialling Numbers (FDN) to restrict outgoing calls.

GUID	GUID-F19CDD47-158A-4E2A-B3A7-F9857F389BAB
Title	Restricting outgoing calls
Changes	Created it out only named changed no extra text changed due to comments from concept team
Version	6
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Draft

### To enable or disable fixed dialling

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] > **Call settings** [call\_settings\_title] > **Fixed dialling numbers** [fdn].
- 3 Tap **Activate fixed dialling** [disable\_fdn\_ok] or **Deactivate fixed dialling** [enable\_fdn\_ok].
- 4 Enter your PIN2 and tap **OK** [ok].

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-FCE85A8E-BBDA-4A95-9B47-320B4293A4AB
<i>Title</i>	To enable or disable fixed dialling
<i>Changes</i>	label changed
<i>Version</i>	4
<i>Author</i>	PengLeon
<i>Status</i>	Released*

### To access the list of accepted call recipients

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] > **Call settings** [call\_settings\_title] > **Fixed dialling numbers** [fdn] > **Fixed dialling numbers** [fdn].

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-9D6DE3C9-13A8-4BEE-B25F-E0B467FF8F29
<i>Title</i>	To access the list of accepted call recipients
<i>Changes</i>	label changed
<i>Version</i>	5
<i>Author</i>	PengLeon
<i>Status</i>	Released*

# Contacts [contactsList]

GUID	GUID-116B5259-4FA2-46CC-A2EB-6B8073E1EDAD
Title	Contacts - heading only
Changes	
Version	1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released

## Getting contacts into your device

Indexterm: "contacts"

Indexterm: "personal information"

Use the Contacts application to store and manage all your numbers, email addresses, and other contact data in one place.

You can add new contacts in your device and synchronise them with contacts saved in your Google™ account, Microsoft® Exchange ActiveSync® account, or other accounts that support synchronisation. The Contacts application automatically creates new entries and also helps you match data such as email addresses with existing entries.

GUID	GUID-3BC3BC83-899E-4120-A755-E0E716E36061
Title	Getting contacts into your device
Changes	Updated from Togari based on concept team's request Title changed
Version	4
Author	WangHerman
Status	Draft

## Transferring contacts using a PC

If you are transferring contacts using a PC, use the PC Companion program. It's free, and the installation files are already saved on your new device. PC Companion also offers a range of other features, including help to update your device software. You can use a PC to transfer contacts from several device brands, including iPhone, Samsung, HTC and Nokia.

You need:

- An Internet-connected PC running Windows®
- A USB cable for your old device
- A USB cable for your new Android™ device
- Your old device
- Your new Android™ device

GUID	GUID-591E6477-5FDD-482B-BF11-A419FBCAE182
Title	Transferring contacts using a PC
Changes	Updated from Togari and valid for all project onwards Combined "using the pc companion program to transfer contacts" into this topic
Version	5
Author	WangHerman
Status	Draft

### To transfer contacts to your new device using PC Companion

- 1 Make sure that PC Companion is installed on your PC.
- 2 Open the PC Companion program on the PC, then click *Contacts Setup* and follow the instructions to transfer your contacts.

GUID	GUID-27563B9B-6733-47AF-92B4-72F4B3A72B19
Title	To transfer contacts to your new Sony Ericsson Android™ phone
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	2
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

## Transferring contacts using an Apple® Mac® computer

Indexterm: "contacts"

Sub-indexterm: "transferring"  
 Indexterm: "transferring"  
 Sub-indexterm: "contacts"

If you are transferring contacts using an Apple® Mac® computer, use the Sony™ Bridge for Mac program. It's free and downloadable from *Bridge for Mac*. For detailed instructions on how to use an Apple Mac computer to transfer contacts from your old device, go to *Transfer your contacts*.

GUID	GUID-FA1412DB-AA24-4B07-9646-FEF4F5BF258E
Title	Transferring contacts using an Apple® Mac® computer
Changes	Updated from Togari and valid for all projects onwards Added info about bridge for mac
Version	5
Author	WangHerman
Status	Draft

### To transfer contacts to your new device using Sony™ Bridge for Mac

- 1 Make sure the Sony™ Bridge for Mac application is installed on your Apple® Mac® computer.
- 2 Open the Sony™ Bridge for Mac application on your Apple® Mac® computer.
- 3 Double-click the Sony™ Bridge for Mac icon in the Applications folder, then follow the instructions to transfer your contacts.

GUID	GUID-19A42BE7-8125-4DBB-98D0-883E3F8AEE3F
Title	To transfer contacts to your new device using Sony™ Bridge for Mac
Changes	Created from Togari and valid for all project onwards
Version	1
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released





## Transferring contacts using synchronisation accounts

Indexterm: "contacts"  
 Sub-indexterm: "transferring"  
 Indexterm: "transferring"  
 Sub-indexterm: "contacts"

Your device works with popular online synchronisation accounts such as Google Sync™, Microsoft® Exchange ActiveSync® or Facebook™. If you have synced the contacts in your old device or your computer with an online account, you can transfer your contacts to your new device using that account. For more detailed information about synchronisation, see *Synchronising your corporate email, calendar and contacts* on page 197.

GUID	GUID-CF308157-311E-475A-8477-81F42609A3C2
Title	Transferring contacts using synchronization accounts
Changes	Updated from Odin Yuga HTML UG and valid for all projects onwards Device term updated only No need review
Version	2.1.1.1.2
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

### To synchronise contacts on your device with a synchronisation account

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL, then tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-PHONEBOOK.
- 2 Tap  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU, then tap **Settings** [spb\_strings\_gen\_settings\_txt] > **Accounts & sync** [spb\_strings\_settings\_accounts\_and\_sync\_main\_txt].
- 3 If you have already set up a synchronisation account and you want to sync with that account, tap the account, then tap  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU, and tap **Sync now** [sync\_menu\_sync\_now].




GUID	GUID-6252CC57-4654-44CA-8F5C-44B27DC1C425
Title	To synchronise your phone contacts with an account
Changes	Device Term Change Also removed the first sentence in step3 Valid for Odin and Yuga onwards
Version	8
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

## Transferring contacts from a SIM card

Indexterm:	"contacts"
Sub-indexterm:	"transferring"
Indexterm:	"transferring"
Sub-indexterm:	"contacts"
GUID	GUID-0B73987A-CFD6-4F26-805F-BCE6C92BCB9A
Title	Transferring contacts from the SIM card - heading only
Changes	Heading only Updated from Mint Hayabsa and valid for all ongoing projects
Version	1
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

### To import contacts from a SIM card

Indexterm:	"SIM card"
Sub-indexterm:	"importing contacts from"
Indexterm:	"importing SIM contacts"
Indexterm:	"contacts"
Sub-indexterm:	"importing from SIM card"




- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL, then tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-PHONEBOOK.
- 2 Press  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU, then tap Import contacts [spb\_strings\_contacts\_import\_txt] > SIM card [spb\_strings\_gen\_sim\_txt].
- 3 If you have set up a synchronisation account, you can choose to add the SIM card contacts under that account. Or you can choose to only use these contacts on your device. Select your desired option.
- 4 To import an individual contact, find and tap the contact. To import all contacts, tap Import all [spb\_strings\_import\_all\_txt].

GUID	GUID-18318225-441A-4DE5-8329-F7ED19BC1B61
Title	To import contacts from the SIM card
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	12
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released*

## Transferring contacts from a memory card

Indexterm:	"contacts"
Sub-indexterm:	"transferring"
Indexterm:	"transferring"
Sub-indexterm:	"contacts"
GUID	GUID-CEF617F7-395C-42BC-A841-1D43A977B424
Title	Transferring contacts from the memory card - heading only
Changes	
Version	1
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

### To import contacts from a memory card

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL, then tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-PHONEBOOK.
- 2 Press  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU, then tap Import contacts [spb\_strings\_contacts\_import\_txt] > SD card [spb\_strings\_gen\_sd\_card\_txt].
- 3 If you have set up a synchronisation account, you can add the imported memory card contacts under that account. Or you can choose to only use the imported contacts on your device. Select your desired option.
- 4 If you have more than one vCard file on the SD card, a list appears showing different batches of contacts saved on your device, with the corresponding dates for when they were created. Select the batch that you want to import.

GUID	GUID-CAFBA77B-691C-4AF1-9F60-B24534C33AA2
Title	To import contacts from the memory card
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	8.1.1
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

## Receiving contacts from other devices

Indexterm: "contacts"	
Sub-indexterm: "transferring"	
Indexterm: "transferring"	
Sub-indexterm: "contacts"	
GUID	GUID-4012D9CB-D077-4966-A56D-B14DF8B3976F
Title	Receiving contacts from other devices - heading only
Changes	Heading only Updated from Mint Hayabusa and valid for all ongoing projects
Version	1
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

### To receive contact data sent using Bluetooth™ technology

- 1 Make sure you have the Bluetooth™ function turned on and your phone set to visible. If not, then you cannot receive data from other devices.
- 2 When you are asked to confirm whether you want to receive the file, tap **Accept** [incoming\_file\_confirm\_ok].
- 3 Drag down the Notification panel and tap the file you received to import the contact data.

GUID	GUID-23A7741C-808A-4745-84AB-82CEB7F6CD75
Title	To receive contacts from another Bluetooth device
Changes	Valid for eDream 3.0 and Zeus Verizon.
Version	3
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released*

### To receive contacts sent using a messaging service

- 1 When you receive a new text message, multimedia message, or email message, open the message.
- 2 The received contact data appears as a vCard attachment. Tap, or touch and hold the vCard file to open a menu so you can save the contact data.

GUID	GUID-4F2EE42C-BEA9-4F05-BA58-D1AACB381FBB
Title	To receive contacts sent using a messaging service
Changes	Valid for eDream 2.1 Robyn Mimmi Shakira and Rachael. Moved note to main concept.
Version	2
Author	AnnaB
Status	Released

## Adding and editing contacts

You can create, edit and synchronise your contacts in a few simple steps. You can select contacts saved in different accounts and manage how you display them on your device.

If you synchronise your contacts with more than one account, you can join contacts on your device to avoid duplicates.

- ! Some synchronisation services, for example, some social networking services, do not allow you to edit contact details.

GUID	GUID-D26AD4BF-CF50-4F48-A4E2-CB55941BB492
Title	Adding and editing contacts
Changes	Updated from Togari and valid for all projects onwards Title changed only based on concept team's request No other text change
Version	4
Author	WangHerman
Status	Draft



## To add a contact

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**, then tap **ID: ICN-SONY-APP-PHONEBOOK**.
- 2 Tap **ID: ICN-SONY-BTN-ADD-CONTACT**.
- 3 If you have synchronised your contacts with one or more accounts, select the account to which you want to add the contact, or tap **Local contact** [account\_phone] if you want to keep the contact's information only on your device.
- 4 Enter or select the desired information for the contact.
- 5 When you are finished, tap **Done** [menu\_done].

GUID	GUID-CE4A9D46-2505-4EAA-818C-FD7B9BDEB825
Title	To add a contact
Changes	Valid for Pollux Label updated only No need review
Version	11.1.1
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

## To edit a contact

- 1 From the **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**, then tap **ID: ICN-SONY-APP-PHONEBOOK**.
- 2 Tap the contact you want to edit, then tap **ID: ICN-SONY-INFINITEVIEW-OPTIONMENU-EDIT-CONTACT**.
- 3 Edit the desired information. When you are finished, tap **Done** [menu\_done].

GUID	GUID-04C4AA81-EF48-47E7-8F7A-4EF3A3D03F4A
Title	To edit a contact
Changes	Valid for Tusbasa Gina Step2 updated due to SW change
Version	7
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

## To associate a picture with a contact

```
Indexterm: "contacts"
Sub-indexterm: "picture"
Indexterm: "photos"
Sub-indexterm: "associating with a contact"
```

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**, then tap **ID: ICN-SONY-APP-PHONEBOOK**.
- 2 Tap the contact you want to edit, then tap **ID: ICN-SONY-INFINITEVIEW-OPTIONMENU-EDIT-CONTACT**.
- 3 Tap **ID: ICN-SONY-CONTACT-EDIT-ADD-PHOTO** and select the desired method for adding the contact picture.
- 4 When you have added the picture, tap **Done** [menu\_done].

💡 You can also add a picture to a contact directly from the **Album** [album\_app\_name\_txt] application.

GUID	GUID-D8B5006C-48F5-4730-87AE-2730F0693F7E
Title	To add a contact picture
Changes	Valid for Tusbasa Gina Step2 updated due to SW change
Version	9
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

## To delete contacts

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**, then tap **ID: ICN-SONY-APP-PHONEBOOK**.
- 2 Touch and hold the contact that you want to delete.
- 3 To delete all contacts, tap the downwards arrow to open the drop down menu, then select **Mark all** [spb\_strings\_gen\_mark\_all\_txt].
- 4 Tap **ID: ICN-SONY-MENU-DELETE**, then tap **OK** [spb\_strings\_gen\_ok\_txt].

GUID	GUID-BF4AB0BA-7D03-4A81-B9B5-1F422A254EB0
Title	To delete contacts
Changes	Updated for Pollux Gina Rewrote step3 only No other text change
Version	7
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

### To edit contact information about yourself

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**, then tap **ID: ICN-SONY-APP-PHONEBOOK**.
- 2 Tap **Myself** [spb\_strings\_contacts\_long\_press\_option\_title\_myself\_txt], then tap **ID: ICN-SONY-INFINITEVIEW-OPTIONMENU-EDIT-CONTACT**.
- 3 Enter the new information or make the changes you want.
- 4 When you are done, tap **Done** [menu\_done].

GUID	GUID-B75E995D-3011-4ADA-9C38-647947BFA18C
Title	To edit contact information about yourself
Changes	Valid for Tusbasa Gina Step2 updated due to SW change
Version	6
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

### To create a new contact from a message

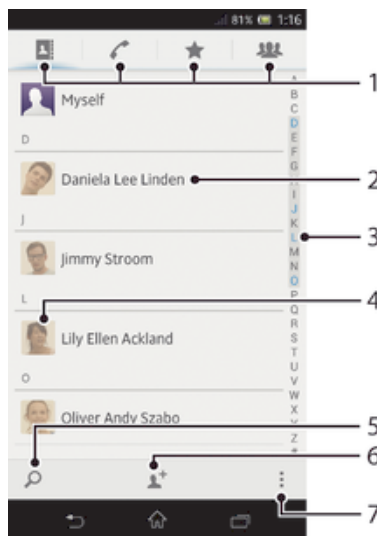
- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**, then find and tap **ID: ICN-SONY-APP-MESSAGING**.
- 2 Tap **ID: ICN-SONY-CONTACT-EDIT-ADD-PHOTO** > **Save** [gui\_save\_txt].
- 3 Select an existing contact, or tap **Create new contact** [pickerNewContactHeader].
- 4 Edit the contact information and tap **Done** [menu\_done].

GUID	GUID-8AD5B8FF-018E-4A1E-A547-577913797FDA
Title	To create a new contact from a message
Changes	Updated from Togari and valid for all project onwards Title changed only based on concept team's request No other text change
Version	14
Author	WangHerman
Status	Draft

### Searching and viewing contacts

GUID	GUID-01145D46-615D-4A67-943F-2197103D4F57
Title	Searching and viewing contacts
Changes	
Version	1
Author	WangHerman
Status	Draft

### Contacts [contactsList] screen overview






### ID: SCR-SONY-EDREAM-PHONEBOOK

- 1 Shortcut tabs
- 2 Tap a contact to view its details

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 3 | Alphabetical index for browsing contacts                 |
| 4 | Tap a contact thumbnail to access the quick contact menu |
| 5 | Search for contacts                                      |
| 6 | Create a contact   |
| 7 | Open more options  |




GUID	GUID-32585317-AD2B-4698-BAC3-DE5353ECF92D
Title	Contacts screen overview
Changes	Valid for Mint Hayabusa Added bullet 7 only
Version	8
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released*

### To search for a contact

- From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL, then tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-PHONEBOOK.
- Tap  ID: ICN-SONY-MENU-SEARCH and enter the first few letters of the contact name in the Search contacts [searchHint] field. All contacts beginning with those letters appear.

GUID	GUID-EB8B497D-7462-4B6E-B63F-A5AC8DE42983
Title	To search for a contact
Changes	Valid for Tusbasa Gina Label updated only No text change No need review
Version	8
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

### To select which contacts to display in the Contacts application

- From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL, then tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-PHONEBOOK.
- Press  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU, then tap Filter [spb\_strings\_contacts\_list\_filter\_txt].
- In the list that appears, mark and unmark the desired options. If you have synchronised your contacts with a synchronisation account, that account appears in the list. To further expand the list of options, tap the account.
- When you are finished, tap OK [spb\_strings\_gen\_ok\_txt].

GUID	GUID-7A65E1EE-85E9-4A76-8BFE-9CA005A82543
Title	To select which contacts to display
Changes	Valid for eDream 6.0 Aoba Nozomi. Only removed one step no need review
Version	9
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

## The quick contact menu

Tap a contact's thumbnail to view quick communication options for a particular contact. Options include calling the contact, sending a text or multimedia message, and starting a chat using the Google Talk™ application.

- ! For an application to appear as an option in the quick contact menu, you may need to set up the application in your device and be logged in to the application. For example, you need to start the Gmail™ [GOOGLE-GMAIL-PLAIN] application and enter your login details before you can use Gmail™ [GOOGLE-GMAIL-PLAIN] from the quick contact menu.

GUID	GUID-A234170B-D4D1-4781-A7D3-C237647047BF
Title	The quick contact menu
Changes	Updated from Taoshan and valid for all HTML UG Device term change only NO NEED REVIEW
Version	7.1.2
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released




## Avoiding duplicate entries in the Contacts application

Indexterm: "contacts"  
Sub-indexterm: "joining contact information"

If you synchronise your contacts with a new account or import contact information in other ways, you could end up with duplicate entries in the Contacts application. If this happens, you can join such duplicates to create a single entry. And if you join entries by mistake, you can separate them again later.




<i>GUID</i>	GUID-FBC8BADE-40C7-48D2-ADF4-8C47C01F47DF
<i>Title</i>	Join contact information
<i>Changes</i>	Valid for eDream 4.0.1.1. Ayame Coconut Satsuma.
<i>Version</i>	3
<i>Author</i>	WangHerman
<i>Status</i>	Released

### To link contacts

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL, then tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-PHONEBOOK.
- 2 Tap the contact you want to link with another contact.
- 3 Press  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU, then tap **Link contact** [spb\_strings\_edit\_link\_to\_other\_txt].
- 4 Tap the contact whose information you want to join with the first contact, then tap **OK** [ok] to confirm. The information from the first contact is merged with the second contact, and the first contact is no longer displayed in the Contacts list.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-01136C21-4A7D-4E9B-93AA-1E74783486F3
<i>Title</i>	To link contacts
<i>Changes</i>	Valid for Tusbasa Gina Step2 updated due to SW change
<i>Version</i>	9
<i>Author</i>	WangHerman
<i>Status</i>	Released

### To separate linked contacts

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL, then tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-PHONEBOOK.
- 2 Tap the linked contact you want to edit, then tap  ID: ICN-SONY-INFINITEVIEW-OPTIONMENU-EDIT-CONTACT.
- 3 Tap **Unlink contact** [spb\_strings\_edit\_unlink\_field\_txt].
- 4 Tap **OK** [ok].

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-740EA2F6-AFDC-4B00-93A9-4800C7DB325F
<i>Title</i>	To separate linked contacts
<i>Changes</i>	Valid for Tusbasa Gina Step2 updated due to SW change
<i>Version</i>	9
<i>Author</i>	WangHerman
<i>Status</i>	Released

## Favourites and groups

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-731CD283-B219-4557-A6C9-D42EE59AEEFF
<i>Title</i>	Favourites and groups - heading only
<i>Changes</i>	
<i>Version</i>	1
<i>Author</i>	WangHerman
<i>Status</i>	Draft




### Favourites

Indexterm: "contacts"  
Sub-indexterm: "favourite"

You can mark contacts as favourites so that you can get quick access to them from the Contacts application.




<i>GUID</i>	GUID-2F920924-BA47-4976-B2B6-66B670B3C210
<i>Title</i>	Favourites
<i>Changes</i>	Valid for ICS update. Only removed "tab" no need review
<i>Version</i>	6
<i>Author</i>	WangHerman
<i>Status</i>	Released

### To mark or unmark a contact as a favourite

- 1 From the Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL, then tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-PHONEBOOK.
- 2 Tap the contact you want to add to or remove from your favourites.
- 3 Tap  ID: ICN-SONY-INFINITEVIEW-FAVORITE-BTN.

GUID	GUID-E489EC2C-B886-4AF4-9A8E-49F9279D3DCE
Title	To mark or unmark a contact as a favourite
Changes	Valid for eDream 3.0 Anzu Hallon Zeus and eDream 4.0 Iyokan Mango Smultron. Changing the Contacts label to the Contacts icon.
Version	5
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

### To view your favourite contacts

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL, then tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-PHONEBOOK.
- 2 Tap  ID: ICN-SONY-INFINITEVIEW-FAVORITE-BTN.

GUID	GUID-C33D067B-1E80-4FA2-83FD-5F70E4CFC561
Title	To view your favourite contacts
Changes	Update from Aoba Rita and valid for all ongoing project Remove one label only in step 2 No other text changes No need review
Version	2
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released


## Groups

Indexterm: "contacts"  
Sub-indexterm: "groups"

You can assign contacts to groups to get quicker access to them from within the Contacts application.

GUID	GUID-49883222-009C-43A5-86FB-3E645982B0EC
Title	Groups
Changes	Valid for ICS wave 1 and 2 Also for Phoenix and Tapioca onwards
Version	1
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

### To assign a contact to a group

- 1 In the Contacts application, tap the contact that you want to assign to a group.
- 2 Tap  ID: ICN-SONY-INFINITEVIEW-OPTIONMENU-EDIT-CONTACT, then tap the bar directly under **Assign to group** [spb\_strings\_assign\_group] .
- 3 Mark the checkboxes for the groups to which you want to add the contact, then tap **Done** [done] .
- 4 Tap **Done** [done] .

GUID	GUID-D97D0B85-FDA0-4486-AE31-1273993A1514
Title	To assign a contact to a group
Changes	Valid for Tusbasa Gina Step1&2 updated due to SW change
Version	3
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released




## Sending contact information

Indexterm: "contacts"  
Sub-indexterm: "sending"  
Sub-indexterm: "sharing"  
Indexterm: "sending"  
Sub-indexterm: "contacts"

GUID	GUID-0A30E687-263E-4A63-A5F9-7D7583BBF0FE
Title	Sending contact information - heading only
Changes	Created from Togari and valid for all projects onwards Title changed only based on concept team's request
Version	2
Author	WangHerman
Status	Draft




## To send your business card

Indexterm: "sending"  
 Sub-indexterm: "business cards"  
 Indexterm: "business cards"  
 Sub-indexterm: "sending"

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL, then tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-PHONEBOOK.
- 2 Tap **Myself** [spb\_strings\_contacts\_long\_press\_option\_title\_myself\_txt].
- 3 Press  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU, then tap **Send contact** [infiniteview\_menu\_send\_contact\_txt] > **OK** [spb\_strings\_gen\_ok\_txt].
- 4 Select an available transfer method and follow the on-screen instructions.





GUID	GUID-CB7E8C2B-D712-4088-A4AE-42D483C91B78
Title	To send your business card
Changes	Valid for eDream 6.0 Nozomi Aoba. Changed "myself" to "my info" in step 2 for Aoba.
Version	6
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

## To send a contact

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL, then tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-PHONEBOOK.
- 2 Tap the contact whose details you want to send.
- 3 Press  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU, then tap **Send contact** [infiniteview\_menu\_send\_contact\_txt] > **OK** [spb\_strings\_gen\_ok\_txt].
- 4 Select an available transfer method and follow the on-screen instructions.

GUID	GUID-B0257474-7B98-40F3-877B-13576B9911C7
Title	To send a contact
Changes	Valid for eDream 4.0.1 Urushi. Label updated only.
Version	5
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

## To send several contacts at once

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL, then tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-PHONEBOOK.
- 2 Press  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU, then tap **Mark several** [spb\_strings\_contacts\_list\_menu\_mark\_mode\_txt].
- 3 Mark the contacts you want to send, or select all if you want to send all contacts.
- 4 Tap  ID: ICN-SONY-GALLERY-SHARE, then select an available transfer method and follow the on-screen instructions.

GUID	GUID-28D36493-2518-4620-B2E6-C045B077CF22
Title	To select contacts to send
Changes	Valid for Tusbasa Gina Label updated only No need review
Version	5
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released




## Backing up contacts

Indexterm: "contacts"  
 Sub-indexterm: "backing up"  
 Sub-indexterm: "copying"  
 Indexterm: "backing up"  
 Sub-indexterm: "contacts"

You can use a memory card, a SIM card or an online synchronisation tool such as Microsoft® Exchange ActiveSync® to back up contacts.

GUID	GUID-26F5D5F6-B693-490B-8EBE-3ED78954583B
Title	Backing up contacts
Changes	Changed from Tapioca Phoenix and valid for all projects onwards Index term updated only No need review
Version	5
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released




## To export all contacts to a memory card

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL, then tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-PHONEBOOK.
- 2 Press  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU, then tap **Back up contacts** [spb\_strings\_contacts\_list\_menu\_export\_contacts\_txt] > **Memory Card** [memory-card].
- 3 Tap **OK** [spb\_strings\_gen\_ok\_txt].

GUID	GUID-A7D7643A-284D-4901-B031-AE32503C69F7
Title	To export all contacts to the memory card
Changes	Valid for Tapioca DS Changed SIM card to Memory card
Version	11
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

## To export contacts to a SIM card

Indexterm: "SIM card"  
Sub-indexterm: "exporting contacts to"

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL, then tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-PHONEBOOK.
  - 2 Press  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU, then tap **Back up contacts** [spb\_strings\_contacts\_list\_menu\_export\_contacts\_txt] > **SIM card** [spb\_strings\_gen\_sim\_txt].
  - 3 Mark the contacts you want to export, or tap **Mark all** [spb\_strings\_gen\_mark\_all\_txt] if you want to export all your contacts.
  - 4 Tap **Back up** [spb\_strings\_gen\_export\_txt].
  - 5 Select **Add contacts** [spb\_strings\_gen\_add\_contacts\_txt] if you want to add the contacts to existing contacts on your SIM card, or select **Replace all contacts** [spb\_strings\_gen\_replace\_contacts\_txt] if you want to replace the existing contacts on your SIM card.
- ! When you export contacts to a SIM card, not all information may get exported. This is due to memory limitations on SIM cards.

GUID	GUID-A6A460E6-AB1C-4F0D-80C4-675CA7DC8CD9
Title	To export contacts to the SIM card
Changes	Valid for eDream 3.0 Anzu Hallon Zeus and eDream 4.0 Iyokan Mango Smultron. Changing the Contacts label to the Contacts icon.
Version	7
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

# Messaging

GUID	GUID-72D9B8E4-2AF0-4F04-9FCE-FBF5487484F5
Title	Messaging - heading only
Changes	Generic
Version	1
Author	OskarW
Status	Released*







## Using text and multimedia messaging

You can send and receive text messages from your device using SMS (Short Message Service). If your subscription includes MMS (Multimedia Messaging Service), you can also send and receive messages that contain media files, for example, pictures and videos. The number of characters you can send in a single text message varies depending on the operator and the language you use. If you exceed the character limit, then all your single messages are linked together and sent as one message. You are charged for each single text message you send. When you view your messages, they appear as conversations, which means that all messages to and from a particular person are grouped together.

- ! To send multimedia messages, you need the correct MMS settings on your device. See *Internet and messaging settings*.

GUID	GUID-74DA81D5-2211-43F7-B8C7-31CADCECBE9C
Title	Using text and multimedia messaging
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	7
Author	MikeCao
Status	Released

### To create and send a message

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**, then find and tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-APP-MESSAGING**.
  - 2 Tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-CONV-NEW-MESSAGE**.
  - 3 Tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-BTN-ADD-CONTACT**, then select the desired recipients from the Contacts list. If the recipient is not listed as a contact, enter the contact's number manually and tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-BROWSER-ADD**.
  - 4 When you are finished adding recipients, tap **Done** [spb\_strings\_select\_done\_txt].
  - 5 Tap **Write message** [conversations\_strings\_text\_input\_hint\_txt] and enter your message text.
  - 6 If you want to add a media file, tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-MENU-ATTACHMENT** and select an option.
  - 7 To send the message, tap **Send** [gui\_send\_txt].
- 💡 If you exit a message before sending, it gets saved as a draft. The conversation gets tagged with the word **Draft:** [conversations\_strings\_conversationlist\_conversation\_snippet\_draftprefix\_txt].

GUID	GUID-A6C2B682-0F30-475D-9682-33A737581FE9
Title	To create and send a message
Changes	update step 3 to implement concept team's comment for Mint
Version	16
Author	MikeCao
Status	Released



## To read a received message

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**, then find and tap **ID: ICN-SONY-APP-MESSAGING**.
- 2 Tap the desired conversation.
- 3 If the message is not yet downloaded, tap and hold the message, then tap **Download message** [conversations\_strings\_action\_message\_download\_txt].

- 💡 You can also open messages from the status bar when **ID: ICN-SONY-SYM-ACTION-SMS** appears there. Just drag down the bar and tap the message.

GUID	GUID-5343B3D0-3140-41FE-BF7A-424395B15F40
Title	To read a received message
Changes	Valid from eDream 6.0. Changed the label to icon. Changed the wording of the tip.
Version	7
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released

## To reply to a message

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**, then find and tap **ID: ICN-SONY-APP-MESSAGING**.
- 2 Tap the conversation containing the message.
- 3 Enter your reply and tap **Send** [gui\_send\_txt].

GUID	GUID-B3F3CD74-24A7-4F3C-A344-9A3DA916D207
Title	To reply to a message
Changes	Valid from eDream 6.0. Only replaced a label with an icon.
Version	4
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released

## To forward a message

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**, then find and tap **ID: ICN-SONY-APP-MESSAGING**.
- 2 Tap the conversation containing the message you want to forward.
- 3 Touch and hold the message you want to forward, then tap **Forward message** [conversations\_strings\_action\_message\_forward\_txt].
- 4 Tap **ID: ICN-SONY-BTN-ADD-CONTACT**, then select a recipient from the Contacts list. If the recipient is not listed as a contact, enter the contact's number manually and tap **ID: ICN-SONY-BROWSER-ADD**.
- 5 When you are finished adding recipients, tap **Done** [spb\_strings\_select\_done\_txt].
- 6 Edit the message, if necessary, and tap **Send** [gui\_send\_txt].

- 💡 In step 4, you can also tap **To** [message\_compose\_to\_hint] and enter the recipient's phone number manually.

GUID	GUID-05F0456B-06EA-4A96-B35E-B114ADFDD14C
Title	To forward a message
Changes	valid for Nozomi 2 updated step 4
Version	7
Author	MikeCao
Status	Released





## To delete a message

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**, then find and tap **ID: ICN-SONY-APP-MESSAGING**.
- 2 Tap the conversation containing the message you want to delete.
- 3 Touch and hold the message you want to delete, then tap **Delete message** [conversations\_strings\_action\_message\_delete\_txt] > **Delete** [gui\_delete\_txt].

GUID	GUID-18644181-BE89-4B64-A303-91754CC902E4
Title	To delete a message




Changes	only changed a label for Mint/Hayabusa
Version	7
Author	MikeCao
Status	Released*

### To delete conversations

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL, then find and tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-MESSAGING.
- 2 Press  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU, then tap Delete conversations [conversations\_strings\_conversationlist\_menu\_deleteconversations\_txt].
- 3 Mark the checkboxes for the conversations that you want to delete, then tap  ID: ICN-SONY-MENU-DELETE > Delete [gui\_delete\_txt].



GUID	GUID-C3195918-C699-4A90-BEEE-730CA2F20750
Title	To delete conversations
Changes	update step3 based on v9 for Tubasa Gina
Version	11
Author	MikeCao
Status	Released*

### To call a message sender

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL, then find and tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-MESSAGING.
- 2 Tap a conversation.
- 3 Tap the recipient name or number at the top of the screen, then select the recipient name or number from the list that appears.
- 4 If the recipient is saved in your contacts, tap the phone number that you want to call. If you have not saved the recipient in your contacts, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-BTN-DETAIL-CALL.





GUID	GUID-FE0F8257-CF1E-4EFA-90FA-2362196AE2C4
Title	To call a message sender
Changes	Valid from eDream 6.0. One step added.
Version	5
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released

### To save a file contained in a message you receive

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL, then find and tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-MESSAGING.
- 2 Tap the conversation you want to open.
- 3 If the message has not been downloaded yet, tap and hold the message, then tap Download message [conversations\_strings\_action\_message\_download\_txt].
- 4 Touch and hold the file you want to save, then select the desired option.

GUID	GUID-5F89D8FF-F03C-4F3C-9A7A-48170CF67FA1
Title	To save a file contained in a message you receive
Changes	Valid from eDream 6.0. Only replaced one label with an icon.
Version	4
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released

### To star a message

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL, then find and tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-MESSAGING.
- 2 Tap the conversation you want to open.
- 3 In the message you want to star, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-INFINITEVIEW-FAVORITE-BTN.
- 4 To unstar a message, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-INFINITEVIEW-FAVORITE-BTN-SELECTED.

GUID	GUID-4FC74355-8CC4-455B-ABFA-23DBA7F58E36
Title	To star a message

Changes	Valid from eDream 6.0.
Version	1
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released

### To view starred messages

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**, then find and tap **ID: ICN-SONY-APP-MESSAGING**.
- 2 Press **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**, then tap **Starred messages** [conversations\_strings\_conversationlist\_menu\_starredmessage\_txt].
- 3 All starred messages appear in a list.

GUID	GUID-950B1757-1EF2-4C8B-B38F-824EFFB7087D
Title	To view starred messages
Changes	Valid from eDream 6.0.
Version	1
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released*

### To search for messages

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**, then find and tap **ID: ICN-SONY-APP-MESSAGING**.
- 2 Press **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**, then tap **Search** [conversations\_strings\_conversationlist\_menu\_search\_txt].
- 3 Enter your search keywords, then tap the confirm key.

GUID	GUID-E70395B9-7B95-4170-B892-B843B89205C7
Title	To search for messages
Changes	delete a step
Version	3
Author	MikeCao
Status	Released*

## Text and multimedia message options




GUID	GUID-DE7D5E9D-9544-491A-9E63-86DFAA4136D1
Title	Text and multimedia message options - Heading
Changes	eDream 2.1 Robyn/Mimmi/Shakira & Rachael. Valid for eDream 3.0. (Changed topic name to be in line with heading.)
Version	3
Author	UlrikaK
Status	Released

### To change your message notification settings

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**, then find and tap **ID: ICN-SONY-APP-MESSAGING**.
- 2 Press **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**, then tap **Settings** [conversations\_strings\_conversationlist\_menu\_settings\_txt].
- 3 To set a notification sound, tap **Notification tone** [conversations\_strings\_settings\_notification\_ringtone\_txt] and select an option.
- 4 For other notification settings, check or uncheck the relevant checkboxes.




GUID	GUID-F5A156A0-322D-4AD0-AF78-BA71783F50AE
Title	To change your message notification settings
Changes	Valid from eDream 6.0. Only replaced one label with an icon.
Version	5
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released*

## To change the delivery report settings for outgoing messages

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL, then find and tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-MESSAGING.
- 2 Press  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU, then tap Settings [conversations\_strings\_conversation-list\_menu\_settings\_txt].
- 3 Tap Delivery report [conversations\_strings\_settings\_delivery\_report\_txt] to activate or deactivate delivery reports.

GUID	GUID-2EAC8C35-A3F3-49C0-9A88-B52E29082E5F
Title	To change the delivery report settings for outgoing messages
Changes	delete a note for Lotus
Version	5
Author	MikeCao
Status	Released*

## To view messages saved on the SIM card

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL, then find and tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-MESSAGING.
- 2 Press  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU, then tap Settings [conversations\_strings\_conversation-list\_menu\_settings\_txt] > SIM messages [conversations\_strings\_settings\_sim\_messages\_txt].

GUID	GUID-C5D5AE02-B914-4668-97D7-478A77D77AB2
Title	To view messages saved on the SIM card
Changes	Valid from eDream 6.0. Only replaced a label with an icon.
Version	4
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released*


## Google Talk™

Indexterm: "chat"  
Indexterm: "instant messaging"  
Indexterm: "Google Talk™"

You can use the Google Talk™ instant messaging application on your device to chat with friends who also use this application.


GUID	GUID-1E9CFE8C-50B8-49B1-94FC-29AD426BC9E6
Title	Google Talk
Changes	Device Term Change.
Version	4
Author	Xiaxin Li
Status	Released*

## To start Google Talk™

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap Talk [GOOGLE-TALK-CLIENT].

GUID	GUID-39156C72-B0A6-4488-9F61-198A160ED9F1
Title	To start Google Talk
Changes	Valid for eDream 3.0
Version	4
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released*

## To reply to an instant message with Google Talk™

- 1 When someone contacts you on Google Talk™,  ID: ICN-SONY-NOTIFY-CHAT appears in the status bar.
- 2 Drag the status bar downwards, then tap the message and begin to chat.

GUID	GUID-52935D59-02B4-4CD1-8B46-9EB6ACF6D202
Title	To reply to an instant message with Google Talk
Changes	Add condition only for FAQ. Change Talk to Google Talk™ for editor's comments.
Version	3
Author	Vera Qu

<i>Status</i>	Released
---------------	----------

# Email

Indexterm: "email"	
GUID	GUID-F40849F4-44EB-4AFE-BFB7-387364E8AE14
Title	Email - heading only
Changes	
Version	1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released

## Getting started with Email

Indexterm: "email"	
Use the Email application in your phone to send and receive emails through your regular email account or through your corporate account. Or you can do both. Your phone can handle several email accounts at the same time. You can set up these accounts to run through one combined inbox, or through separate inboxes. Note that emails you receive to your <b>Gmail™</b> <small>[GOOGLE-GMAIL-PLAIN]</small> account can be accessed in the phone from both the Email and the <b>Gmail™</b> <small>[GOOGLE-GMAIL-PLAIN]</small> applications.	

- 💡 Your corporate Microsoft® Outlook® email messages have to be stored on a Microsoft® Exchange server for the functionality described above to work. See *Synchronising your corporate email, calendar and contacts* on page 197 for more information.

GUID	GUID-08D874D0-85C7-406B-95B1-EEB0903FCB6F
Title	Getting started with Email
Changes	
Version	1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released*

## Using email accounts

Indexterm: "email"	
Sub-indexterm: "more than one account"	
GUID	GUID-83C8D331-63FE-4FD8-8DD8-BA39AEF13F88
Title	Using email accounts - heading
Changes	eDream 2.1 Robyn/Mimmi/Shakira & Rachael
Version	2
Author	UlrikaK
Status	Released




### To set up an email account in your phone


- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap **ID: ICN-SONY-APP-EMAIL**.
- 3 Enter your email address and password, then tap **Next** [next\_action].
- 4 If the settings for the email account cannot be downloaded automatically, complete the setup manually. If necessary, contact your email service provider for detailed settings. For corporate email setup on your phone, select **Exchange Active Sync** [account\_setup\_account\_type\_exchange\_action] as the account type.
- 5 When you are prompted, enter a name for your email account, so that it is easily identifiable. The same name shows in the emails you send from this account. When you are finished, tap **Next** [next\_action].

- 💡 You can set up more than one email account.

GUID	GUID-6D8E1793-757A-4533-9EEE-EB05ED33EEFA
Title	To set up an email account on your device
Changes	For Tsubasas html User guide. Removed Inik.
Version	12.1.1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released




## To set an email account as your default account

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-EMAIL.
- 3 Press  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU, then tap **Settings** [settings\_action].
- 4 Tap the account you want to use as the default account for composing and sending emails.
- 5 Mark the **Default account** [account\_settings\_default\_label] checkbox. The inbox of the default account appears every time you open the Email application.

 If you only have one email account, this account is automatically the default account.




GUID	GUID-B96CB0AB-5A56-4EC7-84C7-E0760681D683
Title	To set an email account as your default account
Changes	For eD4.1 ICS update.
Version	6
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released*

## To add an extra email account in your phone

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-EMAIL.
- 3 Press  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU, then tap **Settings** [settings\_action].
- 4 Tap **Add account** [add\_account\_action].
- 5 Enter the email address and password, then tap **Next** [next\_action].
- 6 If the settings for the email account cannot be downloaded automatically, complete the setup manually. If necessary, contact your email service provider for detailed settings.
- 7 When prompted, enter a name for your email account so that it is easily identifiable. The same name shows in the emails that you send from this account.
- 8 When you are finished, tap **Next** [next\_action].

GUID	GUID-74CB7D9A-D8E7-415A-B56A-6FF254D6705A
Title	To add an extra email account on your device
Changes	For eD4.1 ICS update.
Version	10
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released*

## To remove an email account from your phone

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-EMAIL.
- 3 Press  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU, then tap **Settings** [settings\_action].
- 4 Tap the account you want to remove.
- 5 Find and tap **Remove account** [account\_settings\_delete\_account\_label] > **OK** [okay\_action].

GUID	GUID-869BE5E7-A9F0-491E-B98C-0C9F2A2E36D3
Title	To remove an email account from your device
Changes	For eD4.1 ICS update.
Version	9
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released*

## Gmail™ [GOOGLE-GMAIL] and other Google™ services

Indexterm: "Gmail™"

If you have a Google™ account, you can use the Gmail™ [GOOGLE-GMAIL-PLAIN] application in your phone to read, write and organise email messages. After you set up your Google™ account to work in the phone, you can also chat to friends using the


Google Talk™ application, synchronise your phone calendar application with your Google Calendar™, and download applications and games from Google Play™.

- ! The services and features described in this chapter may not be supported in all countries or regions, or by all networks and/or service providers in all areas.

GUID	GUID-7F044258-0B66-4E0E-95C6-A0946A3F377C
Title	Google Mail/Gmail and other Google services
Changes	Change from Phoenix Android Market changed
Version	10
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released*

### To set up a Google™ account in your phone


Indexterm: "Google™ account setup"

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label\_launcher] > Accounts & sync [sync\_settings] > Add account [add\_account\_label] > Google [SYNC-ACCOUNTS-GOOGLE-TM].
- 3 Follow the registration wizard to create a Google™ account, or sign in if you already have an account. Your phone is now ready to use with Gmail™ [GOOGLE-GMAIL-PLAIN], Google Talk™ and Google Calendar™.

- 💡 You can also sign in or create a Google™ account from the setup guide the first time you start your phone. Or you can go online and create an account at [www.google.com/accounts](http://www.google.com/accounts).

GUID	GUID-BF97C658-8B71-43CE-B8CF-47DD6D0FC9A6
Title	To set up a Google™ account on your device
Changes	Only replaced "Gmail" with a new label.
Version	8
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released*

### To open the Gmail™ [GOOGLE-GMAIL] application

- 1 From the Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap Gmail [GOOGLE-GMAIL-NO-TM].






GUID	GUID-3E791330-5603-4425-BBC9-4EDDF20DE362
Title	To open Gmail/Google Mail
Changes	label with varid GOOGLE-MAIL is replaced with label with varid GOOGLE-GMAIL-NO-TM
Version	4
Author	Xiixin Li
Status	Released*

## Using email

GUID	GUID-9B3A7116-6682-4D17-97B1-952D5D094A4B
Title	Using email - heading only
Changes	Generic
Version	1
Author	OskarW
Status	Released









## To create and send an email message

- 1 Make sure that you have set up an email account.
- 2 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL, then find and tap **Email** [em\_app\_name].
- 3 If you are using several email accounts, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-EMAIL-SELECT-ACCOUNT at the top of the screen and select the account that you want to use.
- 4 Tap  ID: ICN-SONY-CONV-NEW-MESSAGE, then tap **To** [message\_compose\_to\_hint] and start typing the recipient's name or email address, or tap  ID: ICN-SONY-BTN-ADD-CONTACT and select one or more recipients from your Contacts list.
- 5 Enter the email subject and message text, then tap  ID: ICN-SONY-MENU-SEND-HOLO-LIGHT.




GUID	GUID-F0395077-1D6B-4C89-99DB-78251B848973
Title	To create and send an email message
Changes	As per the request from Henrik. Changed from verion 12 into a shorter version resembling version 14.
Version	15
Author	Xiaxin Li
Status	Released

## To receive email messages

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
  - 2 Find and tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-EMAIL. The inbox of your default email account appears.
  - 3 If you want to check another email account that you have set up on your phone, tap the bar containing  ID: ICN-SONY-SPINNER-AB-DEFAULT-HOLO-LIGHT, then select the account you want to check. If you want to check all your email accounts at once, tap the bar containing  ID: ICN-SONY-SPINNER-AB-DEFAULT-HOLO-LIGHT, then tap **Combined view** [mailbox\_list\_account\_selector\_combined\_view].
  - 4 To download new messages, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-IC-MENU-REFRESH-HOLO-LIGHT.
-  If you have set up a corporate email account, you can set the check frequency to **Automatic (Push)** [account\_setup\_options\_mail\_check\_frequency\_push].





GUID	GUID-02C2D920-6923-4830-96DE-028806F248A8
Title	To receive email messages
Changes	For eD4.1 ICS update.
Version	8
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released*

## To read your email messages

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-EMAIL. The inbox of your default email account appears. If you want to check another email account that you have set up on your phone, tap the bar containing  ID: ICN-SONY-SPINNER-AB-DEFAULT-HOLO-LIGHT, and select the account you want to check.
- 3 In the email inbox, scroll up or down and tap the email you want to read.
- 4 In the body text field, spread two fingers apart, or pinch them together, to zoom in or out.
- 5 Use the forward and backward arrows to read your next or previous message.




GUID	GUID-FD9F4939-113D-4787-883B-F276208977B9
Title	To read your email messages
Changes	For eD4.1 ICS update.
Version	4
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released*

### To view an email message attachment

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-APP-EMAIL**. The inbox of your default email account appears. If you want to check another email account that you have set up on your phone, tap the bar containing  **ID: ICN-SONY-SPINNER-AB-DEFAULT-HOLO-LIGHT**, then select the account you want to check.
- 3 Find and tap the desired message in your email inbox. Emails with attachments are identified by  **ID: ICN-SONY-MENU-ATTACHMENT**.
- 4 Tap the attachment tab in the email body. All attachments appear in a list.
- 5 Tap **Load** [message\_view\_attachment\_load\_action] below an attachment item.
- 6 When the attachment is downloaded, tap **View** [message\_view\_attachment\_view\_action] or **Save** [message\_view\_attachment\_save\_action].







<i>GUID</i>	GUID-6F871E93-8365-4B52-A027-F547C8999D86
<i>Title</i>	To view an email message attachment
<i>Changes</i>	For eD4.1 ICS update.
<i>Version</i>	6
<i>Author</i>	RongrongZ
<i>Status</i>	Released*

### To save a sender's email address to your contacts

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-APP-EMAIL**. The inbox of your default email account appears. If you want to check another email account that you have set up on your phone, tap the bar containing  **ID: ICN-SONY-SPINNER-AB-DEFAULT-HOLO-LIGHT**, then select the account you want to check.
- 3 Find and tap the desired message in your email inbox.
- 4 Tap the name of the sender.
- 5 Tap **OK** [ok] when you are prompted to add the name to your contacts.
- 6 Select an existing contact, or tap **Create new contact** [pickerNewContactHeader] if you want to create a new contact.
- 7 Edit the contact information and tap **Done** [menu\_done].






<i>GUID</i>	GUID-2E75631A-CAE2-4121-AF6C-6EE69F5AF6B0
<i>Title</i>	To save a sender's email address to your contacts
<i>Changes</i>	For eD4.1 ICS update.
<i>Version</i>	8
<i>Author</i>	RongrongZ
<i>Status</i>	Released*

### To reply to an email message

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-APP-EMAIL**. The inbox of your default email account appears. If you want to check another email account that you have set up on your phone, tap the bar containing  **ID: ICN-SONY-SPINNER-AB-DEFAULT-HOLO-LIGHT**, then select the account you want to check.
- 3 Find and tap the message you want to reply to, then tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-IC-REPLY**.
- 4 To reply to all, tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-MORE-ACTIONS-EMAIL**, then tap **Reply all** [reply\_all\_action].
- 5 Enter your reply, then tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-MENU-SEND-HOLO-LIGHT**.





<i>GUID</i>	GUID-004FD0FF-8AF0-4E74-855D-533F78929BB1
<i>Title</i>	To reply to an email message
<i>Changes</i>	For eD4.1 ICS update.
<i>Version</i>	8
<i>Author</i>	RongrongZ
<i>Status</i>	Released*

## To forward an email message

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-EMAIL. The inbox of your default email account appears. If you want to check another email account that you have set up on your phone, tap the bar containing  ID: ICN-SONY-SPINNER-AB-DEFAULT-HOLO-LIGHT, then select the account you want to check.
- 3 Find and tap the message you want to forward.
- 4 Tap  ID: ICN-SONY-MORE-ACTIONS-EMAIL, then tap **Forward** [forward\_action].
- 5 Tap **To** [message\_compose\_to\_hint] and enter the recipient's address.
- 6 Enter your message text, then tap  ID: ICN-SONY-MENU-SEND-HOLO-LIGHT.







GUID	GUID-887997C5-464E-4EC1-8783-06B4402A4008
Title	To forward an email message
Changes	For eD4.1 ICS update.
Version	9
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released*

## To delete an email message

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-EMAIL. The inbox of your default email account appears. If you want to check another email account that you have set up on your phone, tap the bar containing  ID: ICN-SONY-SPINNER-AB-DEFAULT-HOLO-LIGHT, then select the account you want to check.
- 3 In your email inbox, mark the checkbox for the email you want to delete, then tap  ID: ICN-SONY-MENU-DELETE.







GUID	GUID-730E5EA9-179D-443E-9A68-6608AA6E4712
Title	To delete an email message
Changes	For eD4.1 ICS update.
Version	7
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released*

## To mark a read email as unread

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
  - 2 Find and tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-EMAIL. The inbox of your default email account appears. If you want to check another email account that you have set up on your phone, tap the bar containing  ID: ICN-SONY-SPINNER-AB-DEFAULT-HOLO-LIGHT, then select the account you want to check.
  - 3 Mark the checkbox for the desired email, then tap  ID: ICN-SONY-SUPPORT-MAIL-SE.
-  To mark an unread email as read, mark its checkbox, then tap  ID: ICN-SONY-IC-MENU-MARK-READ-HOLO-LIGHT.




GUID	GUID-401CA411-0A1F-4A0E-9B2B-453A37EF0DDA
Title	To mark a read email as unread
Changes	From eD4.1 ICS update.
Version	1
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released

## To star an email

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
  - 2 Find and tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-EMAIL. The inbox of your default email account appears. If you want to check another email account that you have set up on your phone, tap the bar containing  ID: ICN-SONY-SPINNER-AB-DEFAULT-HOLO-LIGHT, then select the account you want to check.
  - 3 Mark the checkbox for the email that you want to star, then tap  ID: ICN-SONY-INFINITEVIEW-FAVORITE-BTN.
-  To unstar an email, mark it, then tap  ID: ICN-SONY-INFINITEVIEW-FAVORITE-BTN-SELECTED.




GUID	GUID-7B44517D-C6F1-4D09-AB34-6F9B97705CCE
Title	To star an email
Changes	For eD4.1 ICS update.
Version	1
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released

## To view all starred emails

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL, then find and tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-EMAIL.
- 2 Tap  ID: ICN-SONY-IC-LIST-FOLDER, then tap **Starred** [account\_folder\_list\_summary\_star-red]. Starred emails from all your accounts appear in a list.





GUID	GUID-70E72EE5-C600-4C03-8DEC-E8144982DB37
Title	To view all starred emails
Changes	For eD4.1 ICS update.
Version	1
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released

## To manage your email in batches

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL, then find and tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-EMAIL. The inbox of your default email account appears. If you want to check another email account that you have set up on your phone, tap the bar containing  ID: ICN-SONY-SPINNER-AB-DEFAULT-HOLO-LIGHT, then select the account you want to check.
- 2 Mark the checkboxes for the emails you want to select.
- 3 When you are finished, tap one of the icons in the tool bar to, for example, move the selected emails to another folder.




GUID	GUID-5AC2F609-65C5-4B19-A063-ED590A5935FF
Title	To manage your email in batches
Changes	For eD4.1 ICS update.
Version	2
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released*

## To view all folders for one email account

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL, then find and tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-EMAIL. The inbox of your default email account appears. If you want to check another email account that you have set up on your phone, tap the bar containing  ID: ICN-SONY-SPINNER-AB-DEFAULT-HOLO-LIGHT, then select the account you want to check.
- 2 Tap  ID: ICN-SONY-IC-LIST-FOLDER to view all the folders in the account.

GUID	GUID-2C45BDBB-3267-4D66-826E-073CEBD6F135
Title	To view all folders for one email account
Changes	For eD4.1 ICS update.
Version	2
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released*

## To change the inbox check frequency

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-EMAIL.
- 3 Press  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU, then tap **Settings** [settings\_action].
- 4 If you are using several email accounts, tap the account you want to adjust.
- 5 Tap **Inbox check frequency** [account\_settings\_mail\_check\_frequency\_label] and select an option.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-B32A113B-DDD8-467D-AA6A-FB03C67FDF7B
<i>Title</i>	To change the email check frequency
<i>Changes</i>	For eD4.1 ICS update.
<i>Version</i>	5
<i>Author</i>	RongrongZ
<i>Status</i>	Released*

# "WALKMAN" application

GUID	GUID-623A32D5-8827-4BC1-BB12-BED06D37C97B
Title	Music player - heading only
Changes	
Version	1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released

## About Music

Indexterm: "music"

Get the most out of your Walkman™ player. Listen to and organise music, audio books and podcasts that you have transferred to your memory card from a computer, or purchased and downloaded from online stores.

To make content easily available to the music player, you can use the Media Go™ application. Media Go™ helps transfer music content between a computer and a phone. For more information, see *Connecting your device to a computer* on page 186.

GUID	GUID-A8C39D26-E150-4F69-BAA7-51F47E3DF81E
Title	About Music
Changes	For Nanhu DS html User guide.
Version	1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released

## "WALKMAN" application overview

Indexterm: "'WALKMAN" application"

Sub-indexterm: "overview"



### ID: SCR-11NI-AA-MUSIC-PLAYER-OVERVIEW

- 1 Browse your music
- 2 Search all tracks saved on your device
- 3 Tap the infinite button to find related information online and plug-ins on Google Play™
- 4 Album art (if available)
- 5 Go to the next track in the current play queue, or fast forward
- 6 Total time length of the track
- 7 Elapsed time of current track
- 8 Progress indicator – drag the indicator or tap along the line to fast forward or rewind
- 9 Play/Pause button

- 10 Go to the previous track in the current play queue, or rewind

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-F3DF136D-A738-4BA8-817C-D323DE096CD4
<i>Title</i>	Music player overview
<i>Changes</i>	Created it out only for leaving more space. no extra text changed
<i>Version</i>	15
<i>Author</i>	CynthiaH
<i>Status</i>	Released

## Transferring media files to your device

Indexterm: "music"  
 Sub-indexterm: "transferring to your device"  
 Indexterm: "music"  
 Sub-indexterm: "transferring to/from a computer"  
 Indexterm: "photos"  
 Sub-indexterm: "transferring to/from a computer"  
 Indexterm: "videos"  
 Sub-indexterm: "transferring to/from a computer"

Before using the "WALKMAN" application, it's a good idea to transfer all your favourite media content from a computer to your device and then play or view this content on your device. Media content can include music, photos and videos. The easiest way to transfer files is with a USB cable. After you connect your device and the computer using the USB cable, you can use the file manager application on the computer or the Media Go™ application to transfer the files.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-B3D6A559-577A-49F9-A2DD-413B05741F63
<i>Title</i>	Copying media files to your memory card
<i>Changes</i>	Created it only for Xperia Care removed the cross reference
<i>Version</i>	10.1.1
<i>Author</i>	CynthiaH
<i>Status</i>	Released



## Using the "WALKMAN" application

Indexterm: "'WALKMAN" application"  
 Sub-indexterm: "using"

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-CED067CC-9C0E-4FFE-92A0-D1A9A7D11999
<i>Title</i>	Using the music player - heading
<i>Changes</i>	Changed due to index only added two index
<i>Version</i>	6
<i>Author</i>	CynthiaH
<i>Status</i>	Released

### To play audio content

Indexterm: "music"  
 Sub-indexterm: "playing"  
 Indexterm: "playing"  
 Sub-indexterm: "music"  
 Indexterm: "audio"  
 Sub-indexterm: "playing"



- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL, then find and tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-MUSIC-PLAYER.
  - 2 In **My music** [music\_tab\_my music\_ics], select a music category and browse to the track that you want to open.
  - 3 Tap a track to play it.
- ! You might not be able to play copyright-protected items. Please verify that you have necessary rights in material that you intend to share.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-00E786D8-33B6-4A64-91FD-800EEC4D7017
<i>Title</i>	To play audio content
<i>Changes</i>	Changed for Tablet due to the access changed also added a tip
<i>Version</i>	12
<i>Author</i>	CynthiaH
<i>Status</i>	Released

### To change tracks

Indexterm: "music"

Sub-indexterm: "changing tracks"

- When a track is playing, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-SEMC-MUSIC-NEXT-NORMAL or  ID: ICN-SONY-SEMC-MUSIC-PREVIOUS-NORMAL.
- When a track is playing, swipe the album art left or right.

GUID	GUID-7A4E3960-E486-40B9-A360-A3C3CA0E7006
Title	To change tracks
Changes	No content changed only fixed an index this change will start from Hikari comments from Ed
Version	4
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released

### To pause a track

Indexterm: "music"

Sub-indexterm: "pausing a track"

Indexterm: "pausing a track"

- Tap  ID: ICN-SONY-SEMC-MUSIC-PAUSE-NORMAL.

GUID	GUID-AC80B728-6644-4705-A066-F133C752F665
Title	To pause a track
Changes	Changed from Tablet using "WALKMAN" application
Version	5
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released

### To fast forward and rewind music

- Touch and hold  ID: ICN-SONY-SEMC-MUSIC-NEXT-NORMAL or  ID: ICN-SONY-SEMC-MUSIC-PREVIOUS-NORMAL.

- 💡 You can also drag the progress indicator marker right or left.

GUID	GUID-8D2FC9AE-1F1E-4426-AF2A-041D10DEE2F1
Title	To fast forward and rewind tracks
Changes	Changed from Tablet using "WALKMAN" application
Version	9
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released

### To adjust the audio volume

Indexterm: "music"

Sub-indexterm: "adjusting volume"

Indexterm: "adjusting volume"

Indexterm: "audio"

Sub-indexterm: "adjusting volume"

- Press the volume key.

GUID	GUID-4403F052-3019-49AC-9359-660176677C22
Title	To adjust the volume of a track
Changes	Changed only for Tablet using "WALKMAN" application. Due to the comments from sony removed the first half sentence
Version	8
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released

### To improve the sound quality using the equaliser



Indexterm: "'WALKMAN" application"

Sub-indexterm: "using the equaliser"

Indexterm: "equaliser"

Indexterm: "equaliser"

Indexterm: "using the equaliser"


- 1 When the "WALKMAN" application is open, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU.
- 2 Tap **Settings** [\[settings\\_label\\_launcher\]](#) > **Sound enhancements** [\[menu\\_equalizer\\_ics\]](#).
- 3 To adjust the sound manually, drag the frequency band buttons up or down. To adjust the sound automatically, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-MUSIC-EQUALIZER-SELECT and select a style.

GUID	GUID-EDE19486-44A8-4A55-81A9-99F891AC94ED
Title	To improve the sound with the equalizer
Changes	Created it out due to functional review for odin and yuga. added a step
Version	10
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released



## To turn on the surround sound feature

Indexterm: ""WALKMAN" application"  
 Sub-indexterm: "using the equaliser"  
 Indexterm: "surround sound feature"  
 Indexterm: "equaliser"

- 1 When the "WALKMAN" application is open, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU.
- 2 Tap **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] > **Sound enhancements** [menu\_equalizer\_ics] > **Surround sound (VPT)** [sound\_enhance\_strings\_setting\_virtual\_surround\_txt] .
- 3 Select a setting, then tap **OK** [okay\_action] to confirm.

GUID	GUID-904DB65B-22FA-4C19-992C-A703E77DF344
Title	To surround sound
Changes	Created it due to OMV test for Pollux. only changed one step.removed a label no text changed
Version	8
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released*



## To view the current play queue

- While a track is playing in the "WALKMAN" application, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-MUSIC-PLAY-QUEUE.

GUID	GUID-8E79652E-4E0C-4EB4-8C95-0DAA260BD4AE
Title	To view the current play queue
Changes	Created it due to comments from OMV removed a label used an icon instead
Version	7
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released


## To minimise the "WALKMAN" application

Indexterm: ""WALKMAN" application"  
 Sub-indexterm: "minimising"

- When the "WALKMAN" application is playing, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-AND-BACK to go to the previous screen, or tap  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-AND-HOME to go to the Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] . The "WALKMAN" application stays playing in the background.

GUID	GUID-B8E944E8-3D03-4080-BBAD-83FC95105859
Title	To minimise the music player
Changes	Changed from Tablet using "WALKMAN" application
Version	6
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released

## To open the "WALKMAN" application when it is playing in the background

- 1 While a track is playing in the background, tap the  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-OPEN-RECENT-APPS to open the Notification panel.
- 2 Tap the track title to open the "WALKMAN" application.

GUID	GUID-4A52061B-5BEA-4F74-84A3-60DD425EBBAE
Title	To return to the music player when used in the background
Changes	Created it due to OMV test remove step 1 no status bar here
Version	10
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released*

## To delete a track

Indexterm: "deleting"  
 Sub-indexterm: "tracks"  
 Indexterm: ""WALKMAN" application"  
 Sub-indexterm: "deleting tracks"  
 Indexterm: "deleting"

- 1 In **My music** [music\_tab\_mymusic\_ics] , browse to the track that you want to delete.
- 2 Touch and hold the track title, then tap **Delete** [gui\_delete\_txt] .

 You can also delete albums this way.

GUID	GUID-22F57582-7488-484D-B95E-28258A48B894
Title	To delete a track
Changes	Changed from Tablet using "WALKMAN" application
Version	9
Author	CynthiaH

Status	Released
--------	----------

### To send a track

Indexterm: "music"  
 Sub-indexterm: "sending"  
 Indexterm: "sending"  
 Sub-indexterm: "music"

- 1 In **My music** [music\_tab\_my music\_ics], when browsing your tracks, touch and hold a track title.
  - 2 Tap **Send** [gui\_send\_btn].
  - 3 Select an application from the list, and follow the on-screen instructions.
- 💡 You can also send albums and playlists in the same way.

GUID	GUID-EDC6EF4F-65A2-4936-BD17-63E11FF9215E
Title	To share a track
Changes	Changed only for Tablet using "WALKMAN" application also due to the comments from sony. Changed "share" into "send" and also changed the text in step 3 to avoid the expression which looks like Sony's recommending piracy.
Version	7
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released

### To "Like" a track on Facebook™

Indexterm: "recommending music"  
 Indexterm: "\"Like\" a track on Facebook™"  
 Indexterm: "Facebook™"  
 Sub-indexterm: "\"Like\" a track on Facebook™"

- 1 While the track is playing in the "WALKMAN" application, tap the album art.
- 2 Tap **Like** [ID: ICN-SONY-ACTIONLAYER-LIKE-OFF] to show that you "Like" the track on Facebook™. If desired, add a comment in the comments field.
- 3 Tap **Share** [music\_like\_share\_button] to send the track to Facebook™. If the track is received successfully, you will get a confirmation message from Facebook™.

GUID	GUID-20AC8CF4-0C6B-4930-AB1B-BFBAD84F84A9
Title	To recommend a track on Facebook™
Changes	Changed due to Ed comments just removed a label
Version	10
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released

## Getting more information about a track or artist

Indexterm: "infinite button"  
 Indexterm: "audio content"  
 Sub-indexterm: "related content"

In the "WALKMAN" application, you can get more information about the artist that you are listening to by tapping the infinite button **∞** [ID: ICN-SONY-INFINITE-BUTTON].

The infinite button **∞** [ID: ICN-SONY-INFINITE-BUTTON] also gives you access to related content such as:

- Music videos on YouTube™
- Artist info on Wikipedia
- Lyrics on Google
- Karaoke videos on YouTube™
- Extension searches on the web
- Content from the PlayNow™ service

! The accuracy of search results may vary.

GUID	GUID-60343300-62FE-497C-AC6D-38BF1A5FAC89
Title	Searching for related content with the infinite button
Changes	Changed due to Ed comments
Version	8
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released

## To get more information about an artist or track

Indexterm: "infinite button"

- When a track is playing in the "WALKMAN" application, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-INFINITE-BUTTON.

GUID	GUID-D82BD4D9-626C-4BED-9AEC-21FD1769A11B
Title	To search for related content using the infinite button
Changes	Changed from Tablet using "WALKMAN" application
Version	4
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released

## Using My music to organise your tracks

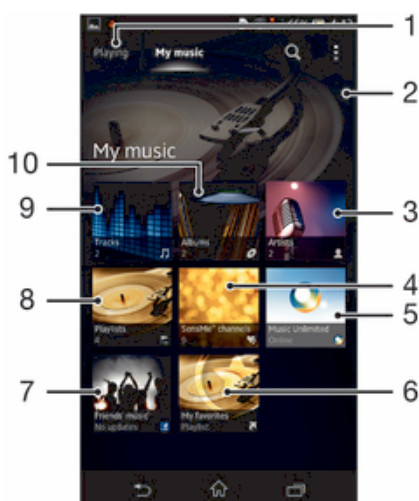
Tap the My music tab in the "WALKMAN" application to get an overview of all the tracks that are available from your device. In My music, you can manage your albums and playlists, create shortcuts, and arrange your music by mood and tempo.

GUID	GUID-D9CE57C5-B9B0-451E-A430-1C9B527FF2DA
Title	Using My music to organise your tracks
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	5
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released

## Overview of My music

Indexterm: "My music"

Indexterm: "overview"



### ID: SCR-11NI-AA-MUSIC-PORTAL





- Go back to the current track
- Picture of the currently playing artist (if available)
- Browse your music by artist
- Categorise your music using SensMe™ channels
- Manage and edit your music using Music Unlimited™
- Browse your favourite playlists
- Collect links to music and related content that you and friends have shared using online services
- Browse all playlists
- Browse audio by track
- Browse by album

GUID	GUID-1EBBF6F9-6E7A-4EC7-8666-E5AA022452CF
Title	Overview of My music

Changes	Created it out only for leaving more space. no extra text changed
Version	7
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released

### To add a shortcut to a track

Indexterm: "music"  
Sub-indexterm: "shortcuts"

- 1 In **My music** [music\_tab\_mymusic\_ics], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-MUSIC-SEARCH-ALBUM,  ID: ICN-SONY-MUSIC-LIBRARY-PLAYLISTS,  ID: ICN-SONY-MUSIC-LIBRARY-TRACKS-BG or  ID: ICN-SONY-MUSIC-SEARCH-ARTIST, then browse to the track for which you want to create a shortcut.
- 2 Touch and hold the track title.
- 3 Tap **Add as shortcut** [music\_library\_add\_portal\_shortcut\_txt]. The shortcut now appears in the My music main view.

GUID	GUID-5681CA4D-407C-4B04-A817-64096B1B2216
Title	To add a music track as a shortcut
Changes	Changed from Tablet using "WALKMAN" application also changed the access due to dual display
Version	5
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released


### To rearrange shortcuts

- In **My music** [music\_tab\_mymusic\_ics], touch and hold a shortcut until it magnifies and your device vibrates, then drag the item to a new location.

GUID	GUID-6EC5B302-1B42-4486-8972-7FA79B29BE46
Title	To rearrange shortcuts
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	5
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released

### To delete a shortcut



Indexterm: "music"  
Sub-indexterm: "shortcuts"

- In **My music** [music\_tab\_mymusic\_ics], touch and hold a shortcut until it magnifies and your device vibrates, then drag the item to  ID: ICN-SONY-MENU-DELETE.
- ! You can only delete shortcuts that you create yourself.

GUID	GUID-C2DD45A8-3E12-4254-B1F0-CA022001D51E
Title	To delete a shortcut
Changes	Created it out due to Ed review comments keeping minimalism
Version	10
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released*

### To update your music with the latest information

Indexterm: "music"  
Sub-indexterm: "downloading music information"

- 1 In **My music** [music\_tab\_mymusic\_ics], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU.
  - 2 Tap **Download music info** [mc\_download\_music\_info\_ics] > **Start** [mc\_strings\_start]. Your device searches online and downloads the latest available album art and track information for your music.
-  The SensMe™ channels application is activated when you download music information.

GUID	GUID-3195FACE-36F1-409A-A913-BD7B086D97EF
Title	To update your music with the latest information
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	6
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released

## Categorising your music using SensMe™ channels

Indexterm: "SensMe™ channels"

The SensMe™ channels application helps you arrange your music by mood and tempo. SensMe™ groups all your tracks into several categories, or channels, so you can select music that matches your mood or suits the time of day.

GUID	GUID-67E8AAFA-80A6-46FC-8109-B7903972EF94
Title	SensMe™ channels
Changes	Changed only due to index no extra text changed
Version	5
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released

### To enable the SensMe™ channels application

Indexterm: "audio"  
 Indexterm: "SensMe™ channels"

- In **My music** [music\_tab\_my music\_ics], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**, then tap **Download music info** [mc\_download\_music\_info\_ics].

! This application requires a mobile or Wi-Fi® network connection.

GUID	GUID-C266C1CA-6744-4DD0-BFAF-84B326099827
Title	To enable the SensMe™ channels
Changes	Changed due to index only no extra text changed
Version	6
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released

### Playing music in random order

You can play tracks in playlists in random order. A playlist can be, for example, a playlist you have created yourself or an album.

GUID	GUID-C3CD30B3-5405-46BF-BD8C-358C628CDFE1
Title	Playing music in random order
Changes	ver 1. Created for Rachael
Version	1
Author	PeterC
Status	Released

### To play tracks in random order

Indexterm: ""WALKMAN" application"  
 Sub-indexterm: "playing tracks in random order"  
 Indexterm: "audio"  
 Sub-indexterm: "playing tracks in random order"  
 Indexterm: "shuffle music"

- 1 In **My music** [music\_tab\_my music\_ics], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-MUSIC-SEARCH-ALBUM** and navigate to an album, or tap **ID: ICN-SONY-MUSIC-LIBRARY-PLAYLISTS** and browse to a playlist.
- 2 Tap the album art, then tap **ID: ICN-SONY-ACTIONLAYER-SHUFFLE-PRESSED** to turn on **Shuffle mode** [music\_shuffle\_menu\_option\_ics].

GUID	GUID-37CE98F9-7B76-4219-890D-5469799D15E9
Title	To play tracks in random order
Changes	Changed a label only no extra text changed
Version	11
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released

### Managing playlists

Indexterm: ""WALKMAN" application"  
 Sub-indexterm: "playlists"  
 Indexterm: "playlists"

In **My music** [music\_tab\_my music\_ics], you can create your own playlists from the music that is saved on your device. In addition, you can install the Media Go™ application on a computer and use it to copy playlists from the computer to your device.

For more information, see *Connecting your device to a computer* on page 186.

GUID	GUID-22626158-D739-4968-953F-803D81E125B1
Title	Playlists
Changes	Changed due to comments from concept team deleted a space All text in one paragraph instead

Version	13
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released

### To create your own playlists

Indexterm: ""WALKMAN" application"  
 Sub-indexterm: "creating playlists"  
 Sub-indexterm: "creating playlists"  
 Indexterm: "playlists"  
 Sub-indexterm: "creating"

- 1 In **My music** [music\_tab\_mymusic\_ics], to add an artist, album or a track to a playlist, touch and hold the name of the artist or the title of the album or track.
- 2 In the menu that opens, tap **Add to playlist** [music\_playlist\_addto] > **Create new playlist** [music\_playlist\_new\_playlist\_txt] .
- 3 Enter a name for the playlist and tap **OK** [gui\_ok\_txt] .

GUID	GUID-C3B20171-8719-4A88-B615-8CCE50EF62FB
Title	To create your own playlists
Changes	Changed from Tablet using "WALKMAN" application also changed the access due to dual display
Version	11
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released*

### To add tracks to a playlist

Indexterm: "playlists"  
 Sub-indexterm: "adding a track"  
 Indexterm: ""WALKMAN" application"  
 Sub-indexterm: "adding tracks to playlists"

- 1 In **My music** [music\_tab\_mymusic\_ics], when browsing your tracks, touch and hold the name of the artist or the title of the album or track that you want to add.
- 2 Tap **Add to playlist** [music\_playlist\_addto] .
- 3 Tap the name of the playlist to which you want to add the artist, album or track. The artist, album or track is added to the playlist.

GUID	GUID-39684E97-C6CE-4845-A001-9CED3D261997
Title	To add tracks to a playlist
Changes	Changed from Tablet using "WALKMAN" application
Version	5
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released

### To play your own playlists

Indexterm: "playlists"  
 Sub-indexterm: "playing your own"  
 Indexterm: "music"  
 Sub-indexterm: "My playlists"

- 1 In **My music** [music\_tab\_mymusic\_ics], tap **LIBRARY-PLAYLISTS**. ID: ICN-SONY-MUSIC-LIBRARY-PLAYLISTS.
- 2 Under **Playlists** [title\_playlists], tap a playlist.
- 3 Tap a track to play it.

GUID	GUID-DB3FBE14-71FD-4B1F-ABC1-B79E84860C1C
Title	To play your own playlists
Changes	Changed from Tablet using "WALKMAN" application also changed access due to dual display
Version	8
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released

### To remove a track from a playlist

Indexterm: "playlists"  
 Sub-indexterm: "removing tracks"

- 1 In a playlist, touch and hold the title of the track you want to delete.
- 2 Tap **Delete from playlist** [music\_playlist\_removefrom] from the list that appears.

GUID	GUID-EEB44D8E-B5E5-4CD5-8218-92D2EA4D722A
Title	To remove a track from a playlist
Changes	Changed from tablet. add a few text into step 2 to be more clearly
Version	4
Author	CynthiaH

Status	Released
--------	----------

### To delete a playlist

Indexterm: "playlists"  
Sub-indexterm: "deleting"

- 1 In **My music** [music\_tab\_mymusic\_ics], then select **Playlists** [tile\_playlists].
- 2 Touch and hold the playlist you want to delete.
- 3 Tap **Delete** [gui\_delete\_txt].
- 4 Tap **Delete** [gui\_delete\_txt] again to confirm.

! You cannot delete default playlists.

GUID	GUID-7D9C6392-3EF2-4E7A-878B-26A541EE5B7E
Title	To delete a playlist
Changes	Changed from Tablet using "WALKMAN" application also changed the access due to dual display
Version	11
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released

### "WALKMAN" application widget

Indexterm: "'WALKMAN" application widget"

The "WALKMAN" application widget is a miniature application that gives you direct access to the "WALKMAN" application from your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt]. You need to add this widget to your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] before you can use it.

GUID	GUID-DCDC7539-3C70-43E4-A6DB-1717EB2FE4DA
Title	Music player widget
Changes	Changed from Tablet using "WALKMAN" application
Version	5
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released

### To add the "WALKMAN" application widget to your Home screen

- 1 Tap an empty area on your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], then tap **Widgets** [home\_cui\_menu\_widgets\_txt].
- 2 Find and tap **WALKMAN** [udoc\_no\_trans\_app\_walkman].

GUID	GUID-BD0DBCf8-67B3-4E14-BF99-5253E114FF48
Title	To add the music player widget to your Home screen
Changes	Created it out due to functional review comments for odin and yuga. changed a step only
Version	8
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released

### Protecting your hearing

Indexterm: "music"


Listening to the "WALKMAN" application or other media players at excessive volume or for a prolonged period of time can damage your hearing, even when the volume is at a moderate level. To alert you to such risks, a volume level warning appears when the volume is too high, and after the "WALKMAN" application is used for over 20 hours.

GUID	GUID-0134A3D9-E3C4-41B3-807C-BD82B9697B2E
Title	Protecting your hearing
Changes	Changed from Tablet using "WALKMAN" application
Version	4
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released

### To turn off the volume level warning

Indexterm: "music"

Sub-indexterm: "hearing protection"

- When  ID: ICN-SONY-LOUD-MUSIC-HVGA appears, tap OK [music\_ri\_ok\_button\_txt] to dismiss the warning.
- 💡 Every time you restart your device, the media volume is automatically set to a moderate level.

GUID	GUID-E246B5D4-C66C-4CF2-9D96-CD41E2FBE40A
Title	To turn off the volume level warning
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	3
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released

## TrackID technology

Indexterm: "TrackID™ technology"  
Indexterm: "searching"  
Sub-indexterm: "track information"

GUID	GUID-35468A67-04FE-4B42-A1D9-2A88481C8CD5
Title	TrackID technology - heading only
Changes	
Version	1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released*

## Identifying music using TrackID™ technology

Indexterm: "TrackID™ technology"  
Indexterm: "searching"  
Sub-indexterm: "track information"


Use the TrackID™ music recognition service to identify a music track you hear playing in your surroundings. Just record a short sample of the song and you'll get artist, title and album info within seconds. You can purchase tracks identified by TrackID™ and you can view TrackID™ charts to see what TrackID™ users around the globe are searching for. For best results, use TrackID™ technology in a quiet area.

- ! The TrackID™ application and the TrackID™ service are not supported in all countries/regions, or by all networks and/or service providers in all areas.

GUID	GUID-D1B43D3C-7EEF-4158-8400-C2F30C3ECDE6
Title	TrackID™ technology
Changes	add trade mark "TM" for TrackID only no other text change for Dogo
Version	6.1.2
Author	LisaY
Status	Released

## To open the TrackID™ application

Indexterm: "TrackID™ technology"  
Sub-indexterm: "opening"

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL .
  - 2 Find and tap TrackID™ [ti\_application\_name\_txt] .
- 💡 You can also use the TrackID™ widget to open the TrackID™ [ti\_application\_name\_txt] application.

GUID	GUID-C81DD308-62BE-4BBD-A682-CB41B327C1E0
Title	To open the TrackID™ application
Changes	Remove the trackID icon in step 2.
Version	7
Author	JessyD
Status	Released

## To search for track information using TrackID™

Indexterm: "TrackID™ technology"  
Sub-indexterm: "searching for track information"  
Indexterm: "searching"  
Sub-indexterm: "music using TrackID™"  
Indexterm: "music"



Sub-indexterm: "searching using TrackID™"

- 1 Open the **TrackID™** [ti\_application\_name\_txt] application, then hold your device towards the music source.
  - 2 Tap **ID: ICN-SONY-APP-TRACK-ID**. If the track is recognised by the TrackID™ service, the results appear on the screen.
- 💡 To return to the **TrackID™** [ti\_application\_name\_txt] start screen, press **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-AND-BACK**.

GUID	GUID-E0CB0974-D670-45CF-A0B5-3A8D4B7CD1C8
Title	To search for track information
Changes	update based on editorial review comment for Huashan
Version	10
Author	LisaY
Status	Released

### To view TrackID™ charts

Indexterm: "TrackID™ technology"

Sub-indexterm: "viewing charts"

- 1 Open the **TrackID™** [ti\_application\_name\_txt] application, then tap **Charts** [ti\_tab\_charts\_txt]. The first time you view a chart, it is set to your own region.
- 2 To see charts of the most popular searches in other regions, tap **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU** > **Regions** [ti\_options\_menu\_region\_txt].
- 3 Select a country or region.

GUID	GUID-DE4BBE03-E523-459E-A100-616D351C1CC7
Title	To view charts in TrackID
Changes	update based on editorial review comment for Huashan
Version	5
Author	LisaY
Status	Released

### Using TrackID™ technology results

Indexterm: "TrackID™ technology"

Sub-indexterm: "using results"

Track information appears when the TrackID™ application recognises a track. You can select to purchase the track or share it using email, SMS or a social networking service. You can also get more information about the track's artist.

GUID	GUID-430D27D9-86A8-40F1-AF6F-B98085921378
Title	Using TrackID™ technology results
Changes	add "a social network service" based on TID comments for Huashan
Version	10
Author	LisaY
Status	Released*

### To buy a track recognised by the TrackID™ application

Indexterm: "TrackID™ technology"

Sub-indexterm: "buying a track"

Indexterm: "purchasing"

Sub-indexterm: "music"

Indexterm: "music"

Sub-indexterm: "purchasing"

- 1 After a track has been recognised by the **TrackID™** [ti\_application\_name\_txt] application, tap **Download** [ti\_list\_download\_txt].
  - 2 Follow the instructions on your device to complete your purchase.
- 💡 You can also select a track to buy by opening the **History** [ti\_tab\_history\_txt] or **Charts** [ti\_tab\_charts\_txt] tabs from the **TrackID™** [ti\_application\_name\_txt] start screen.
- ! The track purchase feature may not be supported in all countries/regions, or by all networks and/or service providers in all areas.

GUID	GUID-142FF661-9B11-4566-BD41-37638DD70719
Title	To buy a track using TrackID™ technology
Changes	update step one from Huashan
Version	9
Author	LisaY
Status	Released

## To share a track

Indexterm: "TrackID™ technology"  
 Sub-indexterm: "sharing a track"  
 Indexterm: "sharing"  
 Sub-indexterm: "music"  
 Indexterm: "music"  
 Sub-indexterm: "sharing"

- 1 After a track has been recognised by the TrackID™ [ti\_application\_name\_txt] application, tap **Share** [ti\_share\_button\_txt], then select a sharing method.
  - 2 Follow the instructions on your device to complete the procedure.
- 💡 You can also select a track to share by opening the **History** [ti\_tab\_history\_txt] or **Charts** [ti\_tab\_charts\_txt] tabs from the TrackID™ [ti\_application\_name\_txt] start screen.

GUID	GUID-C7FE7DFE-9EF2-483D-A7B2-8A7AFEB7AF60
Title	To share a track
Changes	text change on step1 from huashan
Version	5
Author	LisaY
Status	Released

## To view the artist information for a track

Indexterm: "TrackID™ technology"  
 Sub-indexterm: "viewing artist info"  
 Indexterm: "music"  
 Sub-indexterm: "viewing artist info"

- After a track has been recognised by the TrackID™ [ti\_application\_name\_txt] application, tap **Artist info** [ti\_button\_artist\_txt].
- 💡 You can also view the artist information for a track by opening the **History** [ti\_tab\_history\_txt] or **Charts** [ti\_tab\_charts\_txt] tabs from the TrackID™ [ti\_application\_name\_txt] start screen.

GUID	GUID-6A2E01ED-08A0-4A9D-BAEB-F20954FD50B1
Title	To view the artist information of a track
Changes	text change on step 1 for Huashan
Version	4
Author	LisaY
Status	Released

## To recommend a track on Facebook™

Indexterm: "TrackID™ technology"  
 Sub-indexterm: "recommending a track"  
 Indexterm: "recommending music"  
 Indexterm: "music"  
 Sub-indexterm: "recommending"

- 1 When the TrackID™ [ti\_application\_name\_txt] application is open, tap a track title.
  - 2 In the track information screen, wait for the **👍 ID: ICN-SONY-ACTIONLAYER-LIKE-OFF** tab to appear, then tap this tab.
  - 3 Log in to Facebook™ [Facebook™] and recommend the track.
- ! The feature may not be supported in all countries/regions, or by all networks and/or service providers in all areas.

GUID	GUID-98DF18AC-6871-48D1-A9AE-9EA38E711FE0
Title	To recommend a track on Facebook
Changes	update Facebook label name only from Odin Yuga
Version	2
Author	LisaY
Status	Released*

## To delete a track from the track history

Indexterm: "TrackID™ technology"  
 Sub-indexterm: "deleting a track"  
 Indexterm: "deleting"  
 Sub-indexterm: "music"  
 Indexterm: "music"  
 Sub-indexterm: "deleting"

- 1 Open the TrackID™ [ti\_application\_name\_txt] application, then tap **History** [ti\_tab\_history\_txt].
- 2 Tap a track title, then tap **Delete** [ti\_button\_delete\_txt].
- 3 Tap **Yes** [gui\_yes\_txt] to confirm.

GUID	GUID-20DBCFO2-36FD-4981-932B-2A7F0F707A00
------	---

<i>Title</i>	To delete a track from history list
<i>Changes</i>	update based on editorial review comment for Huashan update from version4
<i>Version</i>	6
<i>Author</i>	LisaY
<i>Status</i>	Released

# FM radio

Indexterm: "radio"	
GUID	GUID-50B65AF5-0E4E-4C2E-95F9-1EEBF8FE2B3B
Title	FM radio - heading only
Changes	
Version	1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released



## About the FM radio

Indexterm: "radio"	
<p>The FM radio in your device works like any FM radio. For example, you can browse and listen to FM radio stations and save them as favourites. You must connect a wired headset or headphones to your device before you can use the radio. This is because the headset or headphones act as an antenna. After one of these devices is connected, you can then switch the radio sound to the speaker, if desired.</p>	

- 💡 When you open the FM radio, available channels appear automatically. If a channel has RDS information, it appears a few seconds after you start listening to the channel.

GUID	GUID-BBBAD591-4F98-4597-B54A-EBB6D1DA402D
Title	About the FM radio
Changes	Device term change
Version	2
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released

## To start the FM radio

Indexterm: "radio"	
Sub-indexterm: "opening"	
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Connect a headset or a set of headphones to your device.</li> <li>2 From your <b>Home screen</b> [homescreen_strings_application_name_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL .</li> <li>3 Find and tap <b>FM radio</b> [fmradio_strings_application_name_txt]  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-RADIO . The available channels appear as you scroll through the frequency band.</li> </ol>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>! When you start the FM radio, available channels appear automatically. If a channel has RDS information, it appears a few seconds after you start listening to the channel.</li> </ul>	

GUID	GUID-3898AB21-BAB7-40B6-8858-8BA79137E5ED
Title	To open the FM radio
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	4
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released

## To move between radio channels

Indexterm: "radio"	
Sub-indexterm: "selecting a channel"	
Indexterm: "FM radio"	
Sub-indexterm: "selecting a channel"	
Indexterm: "radio"	
Sub-indexterm: "moving between channels"	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Flick your finger left or right along the frequency band.</li> <li>• Drag the tuning dial right or left.</li> </ul>	
GUID	GUID-CBBF7274-CC1C-4267-8C7F-F36E2362D7BC
Title	To move between radio channels
Changes	For Nozomi ICS: add 'a' in index
Version	3
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released*

## To select the radio region

Indexterm: "radio"	
--------------------	--

Sub-indexterm: "radio region"

- 1 When the radio is open, press **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**.
- 2 Tap **Set radio region** [fmradio\_strings\_dialog\_title\_set\_radio\_region\_txt] .
- 3 Select an option.

GUID	GUID-C4C8BAA2-3545-46E9-BA22-591362850F6D
Title	To select the radio region
Changes	For Odin & Yuga
Version	1
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released

### To adjust the visualiser

Indexterm: "radio"

Sub-indexterm: "visualiser"

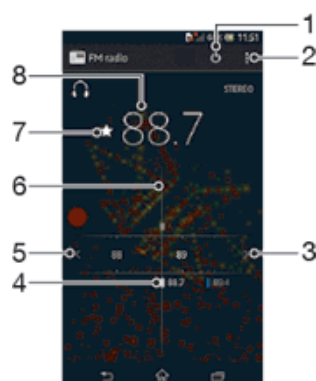
- 1 When the radio is open, tap **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**.
- 2 Tap **Visualizer** [fmradio\_strings\_menu\_visualizer\_txt] .
- 3 Select an option.

GUID	GUID-3DB80072-63E2-4F94-AF7A-7638362DB9AF
Title	To adjust the visualizer
Changes	For Togari HTML: changed from 'visualizer' to 'visualiser'.
Version	2
Author	XuCindy
Status	Draft

### FM radio overview

Indexterm: "radio"

Sub-indexterm: ""



**ID: SCR-SONY-EDREAM-RADIO-PORTRAIT**

- 1 Radio on/off button
- 2 View menu options
- 3 Move up the frequency band to search for a channel
- 4 A saved favourite channel
- 5 Move down the frequency band to search for a channel
- 6 Tuning dial
- 7 Save or remove a channel as a favourite
- 8 Tuned frequency

GUID	GUID-37879EDC-C7EC-40D4-A861-001E14183BB5
Title	FM radio overview
Changes	For taoshan: delete one setting
Version	9
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released*

## Using your favourite radio channels

You can save the radio channels you most frequently listen to as favourites. By using favourites you can quickly return to a radio channel.

GUID	GUID-BBAC5D23-766F-42C3-94D1-6785FFEB7932
Title	Using favourite radio channels
Changes	Valid for eDream 2.1 Robyn/Mimmi/Sharkira and onwards. Changed the title according to editor's comment.
Version	2
Author	PeterC
Status	Released

### To save a channel as a favourite

```
Indexterm: "radio"
Sub-indexterm: "favourites"
Indexterm: "favourites"
Sub-indexterm: "saving radio channels as"
Indexterm: "presets"
Sub-indexterm: "saving radio channels as"
```

- 1 When the radio is open, navigate to the channel that you want to save as a favourite.
- 2 Tap ☆ID: ICN-SONY-AND-RADIO-FAVOURITE-ON.
- 3 Enter a name and select a colour for the channel, then press **Save** [save\_label].

GUID	GUID-E43E695E-5D0D-4A62-8D48-1CC6F1866CC3
Title	To save a channel as a favourite
Changes	For Taoshan: no text change; changed an icon
Version	4
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released

### To remove a channel as a favourite

```
Indexterm: "radio"
Sub-indexterm: "favourites"
Indexterm: "FM radio"
Sub-indexterm: "favourites"
Indexterm: "favourites"
Sub-indexterm: "removing radio channels as"
Indexterm: "presets"
Sub-indexterm: "removing radio channels as"
```

- 1 When the radio is open, navigate to the channel that you want to remove.
- 2 Tap ★ID: ICN-SONY-INFINITEVIEW-FAVORITE-ACTION-BTN, then tap **Delete** [gui\_delete\_txt].

GUID	GUID-57C07E91-6EAB-4D54-905F-A6BE087320A9
Title	To remove a channel as a favourite
Changes	For Taoshan: no text change; changed an icon
Version	7
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released

## Making a new search for radio channels

If you have moved to a new location or the reception has improved in your current location, you can start a new scan for radio channels.

- ! Any favourites you have saved are not affected by a new scan.

GUID	GUID-7F9E2B72-3E39-4E37-86C0-28B03075A5E6
Title	Making a new search for radio channels
Changes	ver.1 Created for Robyn/Mimmi RTL
Version	1
Author	PeterC
Status	Released

### To start a new search for radio channels

```
Indexterm: "radio"
```

Sub-indexterm: "searching for channels"

- 1 When the radio is open, press **[ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU]**.
- 2 Tap **Search for channels** [fmradio\_strings\_rescan\_radio\_stations\_txt] . The radio scans the whole frequency band, and all available channels are displayed.

GUID	GUID-68ADA9D8-FE98-42F5-85DF-5A0060B85ED6
Title	To start a new search for channels
Changes	ver. 2 Valid from eDream 3.0 Used in Anzu Hallon + Zeus Global
Version	2
Author	WangT
Status	Released

## Sound settings

Indexterm: "radio sound"

GUID	GUID-FB9045F8-AC19-4401-9A4B-4838EB6B5B3C
Title	Sound settings - heading only
Changes	
Version	1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released

## Switching the radio sound between devices

You can listen to the radio through a wired headset or through wired headphones. Once either device is connected, you can switch the sound to the speaker, if desired.


GUID	GUID-A7C4F5DA-CB55-4560-B2CE-FDA843730C49
Title	Switching between the speaker and the handsfree
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	3
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released

### To switch the radio sound to the speaker

Indexterm: "radio"

Sub-indexterm: "listening to with the speaker"

- 1 When the radio is open, press **[ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU]**.
- 2 Tap **Play in speaker** [fmradio\_strings\_play\_in\_loadspeaker\_txt] .

 To switch the sound back to the wired headset or headphones, press **[ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU]** and tap **Play in headphones** [fmradio\_strings\_menu\_play\_in\_headphones\_txt] .

GUID	GUID-B9A08CE9-BA43-4C99-85FF-9B796DA9CCFB
Title	To switch between the speaker and handsfree
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	4
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released

## Switching between mono and stereo sound mode

You can listen to your FM radio in either mono or stereo mode. In some situations, switching to mono mode can reduce noise and improve sound quality.

GUID	GUID-F811B111-325A-4DE0-A5CB-A2212EF4DE3B
Title	Switching between the stereo sound and the mono sound
Changes	Correct the misspelling of stereo
Version	2
Author	JessyD
Status	Released

### To switch between mono and stereo sound mode

Indexterm: "radio"

Sub-indexterm: "mono sound"

Indexterm: "radio"

Sub-indexterm: "stereo sound"

- 1 When the radio is open, press **⌘: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**.
- 2 Tap **Enable stereo sound** [fmradio\_strings\_menu\_play\_in\_stereo\_txt] .
- 3 To listen to the radio in mono sound mode again, press **⌘: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU** and tap **Force mono sound** [fmradio\_strings\_menu\_play\_in\_mono\_txt] .

GUID	GUID-3FBD4FE8-230A-4F5E-9823-984B1F29EB2D
Title	To switch between the mono sound and stereo sound
Changes	For eD6.0
Version	1
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released

## Identifying radio tracks using TrackID™

Use TrackID™ [ti\_application\_name\_txt] technology to identify music tracks as they play on your device's FM radio.

GUID	GUID-819ED68C-5940-440C-AA23-CD4827FD3F34
Title	Identifying your music in TrackID
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	2
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released

### To identify a song on the FM radio using TrackID™

Indexterm: "TrackID™ technology"

Sub-indexterm: "using with the FM Radio"

- 1 While the song is playing on your device's FM radio, press **⌘: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**, then select **TrackID™** [ti\_application\_name\_txt] .
  - 2 A progress indicator appears while the TrackID™ application samples the song. If successful, you are presented with a track result, or a list of possible tracks.
  - 3 Press **⌘: ICN-SONY-KEY-AND-BACK** to return the FM Radio.
- ! The TrackID™ application and the TrackID™ service are not supported in all countries/regions, or by all networks and/or service providers in all areas.

GUID	GUID-1931C6CE-DD54-4358-89BE-377610C41914
Title	To identify the music your are listening using TrackID
Changes	For Togari HTML: TrackID text loop. No text changes.
Version	7
Author	XuCindy
Status	Draft



# Camera

Indexterm: "camera"	
Indexterm: "video camera"	
Indexterm: "still camera"	
Indexterm: "taking photos"	
Indexterm: "recording videos"	
Indexterm: "front camera"	
Indexterm: "self-portrait"	
GUID	GUID-E4470E6D-79A2-4CE2-AE2C-002C9F139F1A
Title	Camera - heading only
Changes	
Version	1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released

## About the camera

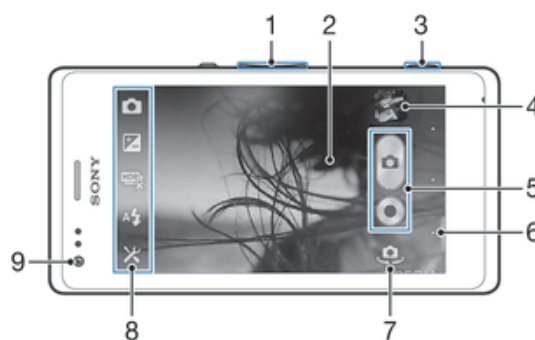
Indexterm: "camera"	
Indexterm: "video camera"	
Indexterm: "still camera"	
Indexterm: "taking photos"	
Indexterm: "recording videos"	
Indexterm: "front camera"	
Indexterm: "self-portrait"	

The camera in your device is equipped with the highly sensitive Exmor R sensor, which helps you capture sharp photos and videos even in low lighting conditions. From the camera, you can, for example, send your photos and videos to friends as messages, or upload them to a web service. Your device also has a front camera, which is useful for self-portraits.

GUID	GUID-A3159162-1C34-4872-987B-581FC59096EB
Title	About the camera
Changes	Device term change
Version	3
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released

## Camera controls overview

Indexterm: "camera"	
Sub-indexterm: "overview"	
Indexterm: "camera"	
Sub-indexterm: "screen"	
Indexterm: "camera"	
Sub-indexterm: "controls"	



ID: ILL-SONY-13NY-CAMERA

- 1 Zoom in or out
- 2 Main camera screen
- 3 Camera key – Activate the camera/Take photos/Record videos
- 4 View photos and videos
- 5 Take photos or record video clips

- 6 Go back a step or exit the camera
- 7 Switch between front and main camera
- 8 Camera setting icons
- 9 Front camera

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-6E27C077-E3B0-4F89-B463-8F1BC8016007
<i>Title</i>	Camera controls overview
<i>Changes</i>	For Huashan and Taoshan: no text changes made; updated according to Huashan camera UI design
<i>Version</i>	7.1.1
<i>Author</i>	XuCindy
<i>Status</i>	Released

### To open the camera

- When the screen is active, press and hold down the camera key.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-D2317AC7-ACCD-42E1-B05F-3B3D94DD9B2C
<i>Title</i>	To activate the camera
<i>Changes</i>	ICS1,add a condition
<i>Version</i>	4
<i>Author</i>	XuCindy
<i>Status</i>	Released*

### To close the camera

Indexterm: "camera"  
Sub-indexterm: "closing"

- Press **⏪ ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-AND-BACK** from the main camera screen.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-72228233-A66D-48CC-90B2-1A216EB6D41B
<i>Title</i>	To close the camera
<i>Changes</i>	add 'from the main camera screen'
<i>Version</i>	2
<i>Author</i>	XuCindy
<i>Status</i>	Released

## Using the still camera

Indexterm: "still camera"

There are three ways to take photos with the still camera. You can press the camera key, tap the on-screen camera button, or touch a spot on the screen.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-81D1BCB4-5421-4999-947E-87B78BA38C54
<i>Title</i>	Using the still camera - heading
<i>Changes</i>	ICS 1,add a condition
<i>Version</i>	3
<i>Author</i>	XuCindy
<i>Status</i>	Released

### To take a photo using the camera key

Indexterm: "taking photos"  
Sub-indexterm: "using the camera key"  
Indexterm: "camera"  
Sub-indexterm: "taking photos"  
Indexterm: "photos"  
Sub-indexterm: "taking"

- 1 Activate the camera.
- 2 Press the camera key fully down.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-962E2F79-7647-42C7-9A15-B076E0898AB3
<i>Title</i>	To take a photo using the camera key
<i>Changes</i>	For Odin&Yuga: Detele step 2.
<i>Version</i>	5
<i>Author</i>	XuCindy
<i>Status</i>	Released

### To take a photo by tapping the on-screen camera button

Indexterm: "taking photos"  
Sub-indexterm: "by tapping"  
Indexterm: "camera"  
Sub-indexterm: "taking photos"  
Indexterm: "photos"

Sub-indexterm: "taking"

- 1 Activate the camera.
- 2 Point the camera towards the subject.
- 3 Tap the on-screen camera button **GUID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-ONSCREEN-BUTTON**. The photo is taken as soon as you release your finger.

GUID	GUID-4622B323-F548-476E-8173-532072C9BCB0
Title	To take a photo by tapping the on-screen button
Changes	For Odin&Yuga:Delete step 2,3,4.
Version	3
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released

### To take a self-portrait using the front camera

Indexterm: "taking photos"  
 Sub-indexterm: "self-portraits"  
 Indexterm: "camera"  
 Sub-indexterm: "self-portraits"  
 Indexterm: "photos"  
 Sub-indexterm: "taking"

- 1 Activate the camera.
- 2 Tap the icon on the top left of the screen, then find and select **Front camera** [\[cam\\_strings\\_capturing\\_mode\\_front\\_camera\\_txt\]](#).
- 3 To take the photo, press the camera key. The photo is taken as soon as you release your finger.

GUID	GUID-8BA01D91-C162-4CA5-8799-3DFD5099BA0C
Title	To take a self-portrait
Changes	For Odin & Yuga: Delete step 2-4.
Version	9
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released

### To use the zoom function

Indexterm: "zoom"  
 Indexterm: "camera"  
 Sub-indexterm: "zoom"

- When the camera is open, press the volume key up or down to zoom in or out.

GUID	GUID-8EB812FD-8599-4290-ACF7-7AB15082F0DC
Title	To use zoom
Changes	Changed for eDream 4.0
Version	3
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released

### To use the still camera flash

Indexterm: "camera"  
 Sub-indexterm: "using the flash"  
 Indexterm: "flash"  
 Sub-indexterm: "using when taking photos"

- 1 When the camera is open, tap **GUID: ICN-SONY-MENU-SETTINGS**.
- 2 Tap **Flash** [\[cam\\_strings\\_advanced\\_setting\\_flash\\_txt\]](#), and select your desired flash setting.
- 3 Take the photo.

GUID	GUID-6075BDDE-DDAA-43BC-8CBB-12AF5C8109DB
Title	To use the still camera flash
Changes	for Mint; text changes made; changed press to tap and changed tags of an icon
Version	5
Author	JessicaL
Status	Released

### To view your photos and videos

Indexterm: "camera"  
 Sub-indexterm: "viewing photos"  
 Indexterm: "viewing"  
 Sub-indexterm: "photos"  
 Indexterm: "photos"

Sub-indexterm: "viewing"

- 1 Open the camera, then tap a thumbnail at the top right of the screen to open a photo or video.
- 2 Flick left or right to view your photos and videos. Videos are identified by **ID: ICN-SONY-SEMC-MUSIC-PLAY-NORMAL**.

GUID	GUID-239B38C4-A380-4C4D-99D0-920BADC8FC12
Title	To view your photos
Changes	For Odin and Yuga: delete a note
Version	8
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released

### To delete a photo

- 1 Open the photo that you want to delete.
- 2 Tap an empty area of the screen to make **ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-REVIEW-DELETE** appear.
- 3 Tap **ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-REVIEW-DELETE**.
- 4 Tap **Delete** [video\_strings\_delete\_txt] to confirm.

GUID	GUID-D9349D8E-79C5-4E25-96EC-96911F82C141
Title	To delete a photo
Changes	For Taoshan: change from 'ok' to 'delete'.
Version	8
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released

## Face detection

Indexterm: "face detection"  
 Indexterm: "camera"  
 Sub-indexterm: "face detection"

You can use face detection to bring an off-centre face into focus. The camera automatically detects up to five faces, indicated by white frames. A yellow frame shows which face has been selected for focus. Focus is set to the face closest to the camera. You can also tap one of the frames to select which face should be in focus.

GUID	GUID-63D9E56D-F38F-4859-BBDB-87F159FC263F
Title	Face detection
Changes	valid for Anzu/Hallon - changed green to yellow
Version	2
Author	JessicaL
Status	Released

### To turn on face detection

- 1 Activate the camera.
- 2 Tap the icon on the top left of the screen, then select **Normal** [cam\_strings\_capturing\_mode\_normal\_txt].
- 3 To display all settings, tap **ID: ICN-SONY-MENU-SETTINGS**.
- 4 Tap **Focus mode** [cam\_strings\_focus\_mode\_txt] > **Face detection** [cam\_strings\_focus\_mode\_face\_detection\_txt].

GUID	GUID-5A0ADE83-3ACE-4509-8387-91471C221D56
Title	To set face detection
Changes	For Pollux: no text changes; changed label string of 'Normal'.
Version	8
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released*

### To take a photo using face detection

Indexterm: "taking photos"  
 Sub-indexterm: "using face detection"  
 Indexterm: "camera"  
 Sub-indexterm: "taking photos"  
 Indexterm: "photos"  
 Sub-indexterm: "taking"  
 Indexterm: "face detection"  
 Indexterm: "camera"

Sub-indexterm: "face detection"

- 1 When the camera is open and **Face detection** [cam\_strings\_focus\_mode\_face\_detection\_txt] turned on, point the camera at your subject. Up to five faces can be detected, and each detected face is framed.
- 2 Press the camera key halfway down. A yellow frame shows which face is in focus.
- 3 To take the photo, press the camera key fully down.

GUID	GUID-EFCD189A-01A1-4B22-A685-F15358A3C14A
Title	To take a photo using face detection
Changes	for Tsubasa; text changes made; changed the frame colour from green to yellow according to camera software design
Version	6
Author	JessicaL
Status	Released

## Using Smile Shutter™ to capture smiling faces

Use Smile Shutter™ technology to photograph a face just as it smiles. The camera detects up to five faces and selects one face for smile detection and auto focus.

When the selected face smiles, the camera automatically takes a photo.

GUID	GUID-77C6CF85-B277-4D09-995B-C19F88AC0FBE
Title	Smile detection
Changes	old 6.0 version
Version	3
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released

### To turn on Smile Shutter™

- 1 Activate the camera.
- 2 To display all settings, tap **☒ ID: ICN-SONY-MENU-SETTINGS**.
- 3 Tap **Smile Shutter** [cam\_strings\_smile\_shutter\_cy\_txt] and select a smile level.

GUID	GUID-65983621-42FC-4F42-8CF8-06C2A05ABBE4
Title	To set smile detection
Changes	For Odin&Yuga: Delete step 2.
Version	9
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released*

### To take a photo using Smile Shutter™

Indexterm: "taking photos"  
 Sub-indexterm: "using smile detection"  
 Sub-indexterm: "using Smile Shutter™"  
 Indexterm: "camera"  
 Sub-indexterm: "taking photos"  
 Indexterm: "photos"  
 Sub-indexterm: "taking"  
 Indexterm: "camera"  
 Sub-indexterm: "smile detection"  
 Sub-indexterm: "Smile Shutter™"  
 Indexterm: "smile detection"  
 Indexterm: "Smile Shutter™"

- 1 When the camera is open and Smile Shutter is turned on, point the camera at your subject. The camera selects which face to focus on.
- 2 The face selected appears inside a green frame and the photo is taken automatically.
- 3 If no smile is detected, press the camera key to take the photo manually.



GUID	GUID-4AFCD885-96FC-408B-BE91-7BAA76C90ADD
Title	To take a photo using smile detection
Changes	For Pollux: change index name
Version	9
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released

## Adding the geographical position to your photos

Indexterm: "geotagging"  
 Sub-indexterm: "of photos"

Indexterm: "photos"  
 Sub-indexterm: "adding the geographical position"  
 Indexterm: "camera"  
 Indexterm: "camera"  
 Sub-indexterm: "geotagging"




Turn on geotagging to add the approximate geographical location (a geotag) to photos when you take them. The geographical location is determined either by wireless networks (mobile or Wi-Fi® networks) or GPS technology.

When  **ID: ICN-SONY-STATUSBAR-GPS-ON** appears on the camera screen, geotagging is turned on but the geographical position has not been found. When  **ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-GEOTAG-ON** appears, geotagging is turned on and the geographical location is available, so your photo can get geotagged. When neither of these two symbols appears, geotagging is turned off.

GUID	GUID-DBEA8510-B4CD-4F62-8720-DA299E7B3EC8
Title	Adding the geographical position to your photos
Changes	Changed for eDream 4.0
Version	5
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released

### To turn on geotagging

Indexterm: "photos"  
 Sub-indexterm: "viewing same location"  
 Indexterm: "location"

- 1 Activate the camera.
- 2 Tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-MENU-SETTINGS**, then tap **Geotagging** [*cam\_strings\_advanced\_setting\_geo\_tag\_txt*] > **On** [*cam\_strings\_advanced\_setting\_on\_txt*].
- 3 Tap **OK** [*gui\_ok\_txt*] to agree to enable GPS and/or wireless networks.
- 4 Check the options that you want to select under **Location services** [*location\_settings\_title*].
- 5 After you confirm your settings, press  **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-AND-BACK** to return to the camera screen.
- 6 If  **ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-GEOTAG-ON** appears on the camera screen, your location is available and your photo can get geotagged. If not, check your GPS and/or wireless network connection.

GUID	GUID-1DF05979-1001-4B28-B041-BFB6FFDFA30A
Title	To turn on geotagging
Changes	For Odin&Yuga: Delete Step 2.
Version	9
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released*


## Using still camera settings

Indexterm: "settings"  
 Sub-indexterm: "still camera "  
 Indexterm: "camera"  
 Sub-indexterm: "settings"

GUID	GUID-2D0BFF4E-8F39-4AD6-9126-43093042FC18
Title	Using still camera settings - heading
Changes	Valid from e-dream 3.0.
Version	2
Author	JessicaL
Status	Released

### To adjust the still camera settings


Indexterm: "camera"  
 Indexterm: "settings"  
 Sub-indexterm: "camera"  
 Indexterm: "still camera"  
 Sub-indexterm: "settings"

- 1 Activate the camera.
- 2 To display all settings, tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-MENU-SETTINGS**.
- 3 Select the setting that you want to adjust, then edit as desired.

GUID	GUID-FD8232A8-DD3A-4B07-9782-F50929353DFB
Title	To select still camera settings
Changes	For Odin&Yuga: Delete step 2; changed in step 3

Version	4
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released

### To customise the still camera settings panel

- 1 When the camera is open, tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-MENU-SETTINGS** to display all settings.
- 2 Touch and hold the setting you want to move and drag it to the desired position.

 If you drag the setting outside of the settings panel, the change is cancelled.

GUID	GUID-55ABBAD7-0AEB-4CCD-ABB0-75A1EE05973C
Title	To customise the still camera settings panel
Changes	for Mint; text changes made; changed press to tap and changed tags of an icon
Version	2
Author	JessicaL
Status	Released*

### Still camera settings overview

Indexterm: "camera"  
Sub-indexterm: "settings"  
Indexterm: "still camera"



**Superior auto** [\[cam\\_strings\\_capturing\\_mode\\_superior\\_auto\\_cy\\_txt\]](#)  
Optimise your settings to suit any scene.



**Normal** [\[cam\\_strings\\_capturing\\_mode\\_normal\\_txt\]](#)



**Front camera** [\[cam\\_strings\\_capturing\\_mode\\_front\\_camera\\_txt\]](#)  
Select the front camera if you want to take self-portrait photos.



**Picture effect** [\[cam\\_strings\\_capturing\\_mode\\_pic\\_effect\\_cy\\_txt\]](#)  
Apply effects to photos.



**Scene selection** [\[cam\\_strings\\_capturing\\_mode\\_scene\\_selection\\_cy\\_txt\]](#)



**Sweep Panorama** [\[cam\\_3d\\_strings\\_sweep\\_panorama\\_short\\_txt\]](#)  
Use this setting to take wide-angle, panoramic photos. Just press the camera key and move the camera steadily from one side to the other.

GUID	GUID-D8AFAD06-81E4-446A-B2B8-5F965BC263AB
Title	Still camera settings overview - separated from Still camera settings
Changes	for Tsubasa; added new settings such as Superior Auto and Picture effect
Version	3.1.1.1.1
Author	JessicaL
Status	Released*

### Resolution

Choose between several picture sizes and aspect ratios before taking a photo. A photo with a higher resolution requires more memory.



**5MP 4:3** [\[cam\\_strings\\_resolution\\_5mp\\_txt\]](#)  
5 megapixel picture size with 4:3 aspect ratio. Suitable for photos you want to view on non-widescreen displays or print in high resolution.



**3MP 16:9** [\[cam\\_strings\\_resolution\\_3mp\\_txt\]](#)  
3 megapixel picture size with 16:9 aspect ratio. A high resolution widescreen format. Has a higher resolution than full HD. Suitable for photos you want to view on widescreen displays.



**2MP 4:3** [\[cam\\_strings\\_resolution\\_2mp\\_txt\]](#)  
2 megapixel picture size with 4:3 aspect ratio. Suitable for photos you want to view on non-widescreen displays.

 ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-RESOLUTION-SETTING-2MP

**2MP 16:9** [\[cam\\_strings\\_resolution\\_full\\_hd\\_txt\]](#)  
2 megapixel picture size with 16:9 aspect ratio. Suitable for photos you want to view on widescreen displays.

GUID	GUID-50E3A0A3-30F1-419A-95F5-8E31E958B605
Title	Resolution - separated from Still camera settings
Changes	no text change; separated Resolution from Still camera settings
Version	1
Author	JessicaL
Status	Released*

## Flash

Use the flash to take photos when lighting conditions are poor or when there is a backlight.

 ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-QUICK-SETTINGS-FLASH-AUTO


**Auto** [\[cam\\_strings\\_advanced\\_setting\\_auto\\_txt\]](#)  
The camera automatically determines if the lighting conditions require the use of a flash.

 ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-QUICK-SETTINGS-FLASH-FILL

**Fill flash** [\[cam\\_strings\\_advanced\\_setting\\_flash\\_fill\\_flash\\_txt\]](#)  
Use this setting when the background is brighter than the subject. This removes unwanted dark shadows.

 ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-QUICK-SETTINGS-FLASH-OFF

**Off** [\[cam\\_strings\\_advanced\\_setting\\_off\\_txt\]](#)  
The flash is turned off. Sometimes photo quality can be better without the flash, even if lighting conditions are poor. Taking a good photo without using the flash requires a steady hand. Use the self-timer to avoid blurred photos.

 ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-QUICK-SETTINGS-FLASH-RED-EYE-REDUCTION

**Red-eye reduction** [\[cam\\_strings\\_advanced\\_setting\\_flash\\_red\\_eye\\_reduc\\_txt\]](#)  
Reduces the red colour of eyes when taking a photo.


GUID	GUID-53732C87-D236-4E9D-A3DB-419A332ADCAA
Title	Flash - separated from Still camera settings
Changes	no text change; separated the Flash part from Still camera settings
Version	1
Author	JessicaL
Status	Released

## Self-timer


With the self-timer you can take a photo without holding the device. Use this function to take self-portraits, or group photos where everyone can be in the photo. You can also use the self-timer to avoid shaking the camera when taking photos.

 ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-ADVANCED-SETTINGS-SELF-TIMER-ON

**On (10 sec.)** [\[cam\\_strings\\_advanced\\_setting\\_selftimer\\_duration\\_txt\]](#)  
Set a 10-second delay from when you tap the camera screen until the photo is taken.

 ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-ADVANCED-SETTINGS-SELF-TIMER-ON-TWO-SEC

**On (2 sec.)** [\[cam\\_strings\\_advanced\\_setting\\_self\\_timer\\_two\\_sec\\_txt\]](#)  
Set a 2-second delay from when you tap the camera screen until the photo is taken.

 ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-ADVANCED-SETTINGS-SELF-TIMER-OFF

**Off** [\[cam\\_strings\\_advanced\\_setting\\_off\\_txt\]](#)  
The photo is taken as soon as you tap the camera screen.

GUID	GUID-F58EF0AC-D869-4017-ACFA-0D971DC83DCE
Title	Self-timer - separated from Still camera overview
Changes	For Pollux HTML: change two labels.
Version	3
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released

## Smile Shutter™

Use the smile shutter function to determine what kind of smile the camera reacts to before taking a photo.

GUID	GUID-D65717B3-5AB0-4C82-A1BE-8F0996B7FB5B
------	---



Title	Smile detection - separated from Still camera settings
Changes	for Tsubasa; text changes made; changed Smile detection to Smile Shutter to align with Sony camera products
Version	2
Author	JessicaL
Status	Released


## Quick launch

Use Quick launch settings to launch the camera from the lock screen. If the device is in sleep mode of camera, press the camera key.

 ID: ICN-SONY-SEMC-SLIDING-TAB-FASTCAPTURE-PRESSED


**Launch and capture** [cam\_strings\_fast\_capturing\_launch\_and\_capture\_photo\_txt]

By pressing and holding down the camera key, the first photo is captured immediately after the camera is launched from sleep mode.

 ID: ICN-SONY-SEMC-SLIDING-TAB-FASTCAM-NORMAL


**Launch only (still camera)** [cam\_strings\_fast\_capturing\_launch\_only\_photo\_txt]

By pressing and holding down the camera key, the still camera is launched from sleep mode.

 ID: ICN-SONY-SEMC-SLIDING-TAB-FASTCAM-VIDEOREC-NORMAL

**Launch and record video** [cam\_strings\_fast\_capturing\_launch\_and\_capture\_video\_txt]

By pressing and holding down the camera key, the first video is shot immediately after the camera video camera is launched from sleep mode.

 ID: ICN-SONY-SEMC-SLIDING-TAB-FASTCAM-VIDEO-PRESSED

**Launch only (video camera)** [cam\_strings\_fast\_capturing\_launch\_only\_video\_txt]

By pressing and holding down the camera key, the video camera is launched from sleep mode.


 ID: ICN-SONY-CAM-LAUNCH-CAPTURE-OFF

**Off** [cam\_strings\_advanced\_setting\_off\_txt]

GUID	GUID-A3E21A95-B04C-455D-95F0-7A70EAA0EF9D
Title	Quick launch
Changes	For Odin and Yuga: modify the description of quick launch
Version	4
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released*


## Focus mode

The focus function controls which part of a photo should be sharp. When continuous autofocus is on, the camera keeps adjusting focus so that the area within the yellow focus frame stays sharp.

 ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-FOCUS-MODE-SINGLE-AF


**Single autofocus** [cam\_strings\_focus\_mode\_single\_af\_txt]

The camera automatically focuses on the selected subject. Continuous autofocus is on. Touch and hold the camera screen until the yellow focus frame turns blue, indicating that the focus is set. The photo is taken when you release your finger.

 ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-FOCUS-MODE-MULTI-AF


**Multi autofocus** [cam\_strings\_focus\_mode\_multi\_af\_txt]

The focus is automatically set on several areas of the image. Touch and hold the camera screen until the yellow focus frame turns blue, indicating that the focus is set. The photo is taken when you release your finger. Continuous autofocus is off.

 ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-FOCUS-MODE-FACE-DETECTION


**Face detection** [cam\_strings\_focus\_mode\_face\_detection\_txt]

The camera automatically detects up to five human faces, indicated by frames on the screen. The camera automatically focuses on the nearest face. You can also select which face to focus on by tapping it on the screen. When you tap the camera screen, a blue frame shows which face is selected and in focus. Face detection cannot be used for all scene types. Continuous autofocus is on.

 ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-CAP-MODE-TOUCH-CAPTURING

**Touch focus** [cam\_strings\_focus\_mode\_touch\_focus\_txt]

Touch a specific area on the camera screen to set the area of focus. Continuous autofocus is off. Touch and hold the camera screen until the yellow focus frame turns blue, indicating that the focus is set. The photo is taken when you release your finger.

 ID: ICN-SONY-CAM-OBJECT-TRACKING

**Object tracking** [\[cam\\_strings\\_focus\\_mode\\_object\\_tracking\\_txt\]](#)

When you select an object by touching it in the viewfinder, the camera tracks it for you.

- ! This setting is only available in **Normal** [\[cam\\_strings\\_capturing\\_mode\\_normal\\_txt\]](#) capturing mode.

GUID	GUID-9554F8D4-BDAB-4479-8A03-C5041ECA6385
Title	Focus mode - separated from Still camera settings
Changes	For Pollux: no text changes; changed label string of 'Normal'.
Version	5.3.1
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released*

## Exposure value

 ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-QUICK-EXPOSURE-LEVEL-TCH

Determine the amount of light in the photo you want to take. A higher value indicates an increased amount of light.

- ! This setting is only available in **Normal** [\[cam\\_strings\\_capturing\\_mode\\_normal\\_txt\]](#) capturing mode.

GUID	GUID-91AEAD7C-18FA-4B92-AAB0-7C10B6678961
Title	Exposure value - separated from Still camera settings
Changes	For Tsubasa html User guide. Removed lines tag.
Version	2.1.1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released

## HDR

Use the HDR (High Dynamic Range) setting to take a photo against strong back light or in conditions where the contrast is sharp. HDR compensates for the loss of detail and produces a picture that is representative of both dark and bright areas.

- ! This setting is only available in **Normal** [\[cam\\_strings\\_capturing\\_mode\\_normal\\_txt\]](#) capturing mode.

GUID	GUID-BA0E0681-02F9-43FD-90AC-C6766538D74E
Title	HDR - camera
Changes	For Odin and Yuga: add a note
Version	2
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released


## White balance

The white balance setting adjusts the colour balance according to the lighting conditions.

 ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-ADVANCED-SETTINGS-WHITE-BALANCE-AUTO

**Auto** [\[cam\\_strings\\_advanced\\_setting\\_white\\_balance\\_auto\\_txt\]](#)

Adjusts the colour balance automatically to suit the lighting conditions.

 ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-ADVANCED-SETTINGS-WHITE-BALANCE-INCANDESCENT

**Incandescent** [\[cam\\_strings\\_advanced\\_setting\\_white\\_balance\\_incandescent\\_txt\]](#)

Adjusts the colour balance for warm lighting conditions, such as under light bulbs.

 ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-ADVANCED-SETTINGS-WHITE-BALANCE-FLUORESCENT

**Fluorescent** [\[cam\\_strings\\_advanced\\_setting\\_white\\_balance\\_fluorescent\\_txt\]](#)

Adjusts the colour balance for fluorescent lighting.

 ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-ADVANCED-SETTINGS-WHITE-BALANCE-DAYLIGHT

**Daylight** [\[cam\\_strings\\_advanced\\_setting\\_white\\_balance\\_day\\_light\\_txt\]](#)

Adjusts the colour balance for sunny outdoor conditions.

 ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-ADVANCED-SETTINGS-WHITE-BALANCE-CLOUDY

**Cloudy** [\[cam\\_strings\\_advanced\\_setting\\_white\\_balance\\_cloudy\\_txt\]](#)

Adjusts the colour balance for a cloudy sky.

- ! This setting is only available in **Normal** [\[cam\\_strings\\_capturing\\_mode\\_normal\\_txt\]](#) capturing mode.

GUID	GUID-CCD95519-AFAE-4267-9515-C7C64AEF3A86
Title	White balance - separated from Still camera settings

Changes	for Tsubasa; no text changes made; changed a label
Version	3
Author	JessicaL
Status	Released

## ISO

You can reduce image blurring caused by dark conditions or moving subjects by increasing the ISO sensitivity.

 ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-ISO-AUTO

**Auto** [cam\_strings\_settings\_auto\_txt]  
Sets the ISO sensitivity automatically.

 ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-ISO-100

**100** [cam\_strings\_iso\_100\_txt]  
Sets the ISO sensitivity to 100.

 ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-ISO-200

**200** [cam\_strings\_iso\_200\_txt]  
Sets the ISO sensitivity to 200.

 ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-ISO-400

**400** [cam\_strings\_iso\_400\_txt]  
Sets the ISO sensitivity to 400.

 ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-ISO-800


**800** [cam\_strings\_iso\_800\_txt]  
Sets the ISO sensitivity to 800.

! This setting is only available in **Normal** [cam\_strings\_capturing\_mode\_normal\_txt] capturing mode.


GUID	GUID-EBC172A1-DE26-4D17-84F4-89DFB71D3277
Title	ISO - separated from Still camera settings
Changes	For Taoshan: delete one setting iso1600
Version	3
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released

## Metering


This function automatically determines a well-balanced exposure by measuring the amount of light striking the image you want to capture.

 ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-ADVANCED-SETTINGS-METERING-CENTER

**Center** [cam\_strings\_advanced\_setting\_photometry\_center\_txt]  
Adjusts the exposure to the centre of the image.

 ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-ADVANCED-SETTINGS-METERING-AVERAGE

**Average** [cam\_strings\_advanced\_setting\_photometry\_average\_txt]  
Calculates the exposure based on the amount of light striking the whole image.

 ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-ADVANCED-SETTINGS-METERING-SPOT

**Spot** [cam\_strings\_advanced\_setting\_photometry\_spot\_txt]  
Adjusts the exposure in a very small part of the image that you want to capture.

! This setting is only available in **Normal** [cam\_strings\_capturing\_mode\_normal\_txt] capturing mode.

GUID	GUID-37A6CA5A-3FEC-4530-B7BA-56B28971279D
Title	Metering - separated from Still camera settings
Changes	For Dogo: changed on the words according to ed. review.
Version	4
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released



## Image stabiliser

When taking a photo, it can be difficult to hold the device steady. The stabiliser helps you by compensating for small movements of the hand.

GUID	GUID-5C247A77-68D8-43C5-B54C-F7AC962C69E7
Title	Image stabiliser - separated from Still camera settings
Changes	for Pollux; term change made
Version	2
Author	JessicaL
Status	Released

## Geotagging





Tag photos with details of where you took them.

-  **ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-GEOTAG-ON** **On** [\[cam\\_strings\\_advanced\\_setting\\_on\\_txt\]](#)  
When geotagging is turned on, the approximate geographical location is added to photos when you take them. To use geotagging, you must enable location features from the **Settings** [\[settings\\_label\]](#) menu. For geotags to be added to a photo, the location must be determined before you take the photo. Your location is determined when **ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-GEOTAG-ON** appears on the camera screen. When your device is searching for your position, **ID: ICN-SONY-STATUSBAR-GPS-ON** appears.
-  **ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-GEOTAG-OFF** **Off** [\[cam\\_strings\\_advanced\\_setting\\_off\\_txt\]](#)  
When geotagging is turned off, you cannot view the location where you took a photo.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-7CA8028F-3C9B-47C4-82E6-EBECC45818EF
<i>Title</i>	Geotagging - separated from Still camera settings
<i>Changes</i>	For Odin HTML: remove cross reference
<i>Version</i>	4
<i>Author</i>	XuCindy
<i>Status</i>	Released

## Preview

You can choose to preview the photo just after you have taken or the video you have recorded.

-  **ID: ICN-SONY-CAM-PREVIEW-DURATION-SETTING-NOLIMIT** **Unlimited** [\[cam\\_strings\\_preview\\_duration\\_unlimited\\_txt\]](#)  
The preview of the photo or video appears after you have taken.
-  **ID: ICN-SONY-CAM-PREVIEW-DURATION-SETTING-5SEC** **5 seconds** [\[cam\\_strings\\_preview\\_duration\\_5sec\\_txt\]](#)  
The preview of the photo or video appears for 5 seconds after you have taken.
-  **ID: ICN-SONY-CAM-PREVIEW-DURATION-SETTING-3SEC** **3 seconds** [\[cam\\_strings\\_preview\\_duration\\_3sec\\_txt\]](#)  
The preview of the photo or video appears for 3 seconds after you have taken.
-  **ID: ICN-SONY-CAM-PREVIEW-DURATION-SETTING-OFF** **Off** [\[cam\\_strings\\_advanced\\_setting\\_off\\_txt\]](#)  
The photo or video has been saved after you have taken, no preview appears.

! This setting is only available in **Normal** [\[cam\\_strings\\_capturing\\_mode\\_normal\\_txt\]](#) capturing mode.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-B371194F-AA5E-412A-BB97-412E22A9118C
<i>Title</i>	Preview - separated from still camera settings
<i>Changes</i>	changed 'normal' label strings: valid for all.
<i>Version</i>	2
<i>Author</i>	XuCindy
<i>Status</i>	Released

## Auto upload

Automatically upload updates to photos to a pre-selected social networking service (SNS).

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-50B64185-716A-4532-AEC5-335636BAB190
<i>Title</i>	Auto upload - separated from Still camera settings
<i>Changes</i>	
<i>Version</i>	1
<i>Author</i>	XuCindy
<i>Status</i>	Released

## Touch capture

Identify a particular focus area by touching the camera screen with your finger. The photo is taken as soon as you release your finger. This setting is only available when focus mode is set to touch focus.

 ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-ADVANCED-SETTINGS-TOUCH-CAPTURE-ON **On** [cam\_strings\_advanced\_setting\_on\_txt]

 ID: ICN-SONY-EDREAM-CAM-ADV-SETTINGS-TOUCH-CAP-OFF **Off** [cam\_strings\_advanced\_setting\_off\_txt]

GUID	GUID-6F453966-3773-4C86-8B4D-7BA72FEDC47E
Title	Touch capture - for both Still and video camera settings
Changes	
Version	1
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released

## Shutter sound

Choose to turn on or turn off the shutter sound when you record a video.

GUID	GUID-41F4BDE1-4227-4DD9-ADA6-CB37D174758C
Title	Shutter sound - separated from Video camera settings
Changes	For Tapioca; no text change; separated from Video camera settings
Version	1
Author	JessicaL
Status	Released

## Data storage

You can choose to save your data either to a removable SD card or to your device's internal storage.

 ID: ICN-SONY-CAM-DATA-INTERNAL-STORAGE **Internal storage** [spb\_strings\_gen\_emmc\_txt]  
Photos or videos are saved on the device memory.

 ID: ICN-SONY-CAM-DATA-SD-CARD **SD card** [spb\_strings\_gen\_sd\_card\_txt]  
Photos or videos are saved on the SD card.

GUID	GUID-86D0BE1A-D724-4F2A-A75F-87BD85ADF4D6
Title	Data storage - separated from both Still and Video camera settings
Changes	
Version	1
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released

## Using the video camera

Indexterm: "video camera"	
Indexterm: "camera"	
Sub-indexterm: "video"	
GUID	GUID-90BE8273-E40F-403A-A176-CB6A64CFAE44
Title	Using the video camera - heading
Changes	Generic
Version	1
Author	PeterC
Status	Released

### To record a video using the camera key

Indexterm: "recording videos"	
Sub-indexterm: "using the camera key"	
Indexterm: "camera"	
Sub-indexterm: "recording videos"	
Indexterm: "videos"	
Sub-indexterm: "recording"	

- 1 Activate the camera.
- 2 To start recording a video, press the camera key.
- 3 To stop recording, press the camera key again.



 Shoot your videos in landscape orientation to get the best results.

GUID	GUID-77DC2CA9-B6A6-447C-8FFB-42EA365E6169
Title	To record a video using the shutter key
Changes	For Odin and Yuga: delete step 2.
Version	5
Author	XuCindy

Status	Released
--------	----------

### To record a video by tapping the screen

Indexterm: "camera"  
 Sub-indexterm: "recording videos"  
 Indexterm: "videos"  
 Sub-indexterm: "recording"  
 Indexterm: "video camera"  
 Sub-indexterm: "recording videos"





- 1 Activate the camera.
- 2 Point the camera towards the subject.
- 3 Tap  ID: ICN-SONY-GINGERBREAD-CAM-START-RECORDING to start recording.
- 4 Tap  ID: ICN-SONY-GINGERBREAD-CAM-STOP-RECORDING to stop recording.

- 💡 Shoot your videos in landscape orientation to get the best results.

GUID	GUID-02644258-588E-4C5E-8826-2638BE96058B
Title	To record a video by tapping the on-screen button
Changes	JB update 3 Nozomi: no text change; changed icon name only.
Version	4
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released*



### To play recorded videos

Indexterm: "camera"  
 Sub-indexterm: "viewing videos"  
 Indexterm: "viewing"  
 Sub-indexterm: "videos recorded using the camera"  
 Indexterm: "videos"  
 Sub-indexterm: "viewing"

- 1 Activate the camera.
- 2 Tap the thumbnails at the top right of the screen.
- 3 Flick left or right to browse all photo and video files. Videos are identified by  ID: ICN-SONY-SEMC-MUSIC-PLAY-NORMAL.
- 4 Tap  ID: ICN-SONY-SEMC-MUSIC-PLAY-NORMAL to play a video.
- 5 To stop playing the video, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-SEMC-MUSIC-PAUSE-NORMAL or  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-AND-BACK.

GUID	GUID-9F3A0F88-1945-4F2C-8DB3-A91268BEC4EE
Title	To play recorded videos
Changes	For Odin&Yuga: Delete step 2 and note
Version	8
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released

### To delete a recorded video

- 1 Browse to the video that you want to delete.
- 2 Tap an empty area of the screen to make  ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-REVIEW-DELETE appear.
- 3 Tap  ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-REVIEW-DELETE.
- 4 Tap OK to confirm.

GUID	GUID-AC37F567-3419-42A0-A489-D8EEE0DD20AD
Title	To delete a recorded video
Changes	For Odin&Yuga: Added a step.
Version	6
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released*

### Using the video camera settings


Indexterm: "settings"  
 Sub-indexterm: "video camera "  
 Indexterm: "camera"  
 Sub-indexterm: "settings"

GUID	GUID-8751CE92-CEAD-4007-A5DC-7AF323A30E5E
Title	Using video camera settings - heading
Changes	Using the video camera settings according to Odin 2nd editor review
Version	2.1.1
Author	XuCindy

Status	Released
--------	----------


### To adjust the video camera settings


Indexterm: "camera"  
 Indexterm: "settings"  
 Sub-indexterm: "camera"  
 Indexterm: "video camera"  
 Sub-indexterm: "settings"

- 1 Activate the camera.
- 2 Tap one of the settings icons on the screen.
- 3 To display all settings, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-MENU-SETTINGS.
- 4 Select the setting that you want to adjust, then make your changes.

GUID	GUID-D55F26C3-5C2A-4588-9439-7D6642398DC5
Title	To select video camera settings
Changes	For Pollux: changed grammar
Version	5
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released*

### To customise the video camera settings panel

- 1 When the video camera is open, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-MENU-SETTINGS to display all settings.
- 2 Touch and hold the setting that you want to move, then drag it to the desired position.

 If you drag the setting outside of the settings panel, the change is cancelled.

GUID	GUID-F4D69895-0C2F-451C-9467-0D140C207B11
Title	To customize the video camera settings panel
Changes	for Mint; text changes made; changed press to tap and changed tags of an icon
Version	3
Author	JessicaL
Status	Released

### Video camera settings overview

Indexterm: "camera"  
 Sub-indexterm: "icons"  
 Indexterm: "camera"  
 Sub-indexterm: "settings"  
 Indexterm: "video camera"  
 Sub-indexterm: "settings"  
 Indexterm: "icons"  
 Sub-indexterm: "in the camera"  
 Indexterm: "camera"  
 Indexterm: ""

 ID: ICN-SONY-CAM-VIDEO-CAMERA

**Video camera** [cam\_strings\_capturing\_mode\_video\_camera\_short\_txt]  
 Select the video camera if you want to record videos.


 ID: ICN-SONY-CAM-FRONT-VIDEO-CAMERA

**Front video** [cam\_strings\_capturing\_mode\_front\_video\_short\_txt]  
 Select the front video if you want to record self-portrait videos.

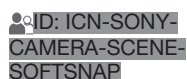
GUID	GUID-890099DB-D0D0-43C9-97DB-8036F9450CE1
Title	Video camera settings overview
Changes	For Togari HTML: no text change; changed icon strings.
Version	3
Author	XuCindy
Status	Draft

### Scenes

The Scenes feature helps you to quickly set up the camera for common situations using pre-programmed scenes. The camera determines a number of settings for you to fit the selected scene, ensuring the best possible video.

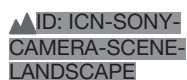
 ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-SCENE-NORMAL

**Off** [cam\_strings\_advanced\_setting\_off\_txt]  
 The Scenes feature is off and you can shoot videos manually.



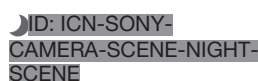
ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-SCENE-SOFTSNAP

**Soft snap** [cam\_strings\_scenes\_soft\_snap\_cy\_txt]  
Use for shooting videos against soft backgrounds.



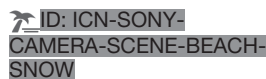
ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-SCENE-LANDSCAPE

**Landscape** [cam\_strings\_scenes\_landscape\_txt]  
Use for videos of landscapes. The camera focuses on distant objects.



ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-SCENE-NIGHT-SCENE

**Night** [cam\_strings\_scenes\_nightmode\_txt]  
When turned on, light sensitivity is increased. Use in poorly lit environments. Videos of fast-moving objects may get blurred. Hold your hand steady, or use a support. Turn off night mode when lighting conditions are good, to improve the video quality.



ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-SCENE-BEACH-SNOW

**Beach and snow** [cam\_strings\_scenes\_beachsnow\_txt]  
Use in bright environments to avoid underexposed videos.



ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-SCENE-SPORT

**Sports** [cam\_strings\_scenes\_sports\_txt]  
Use for videos of fast-moving objects. Short exposure time minimises motion blurring.



ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-SCENE-PARTY

**Party** [cam\_strings\_scenes\_party\_txt]  
Use for indoor videos in poorly lit environments. This scene picks up indoor background lighting or candlelight. Videos of fast-moving objects may get blurred. Hold your hand steady, or use a support.

GUID	GUID-5EDE7E57-7ED0-4F23-B63E-07FFE0EDB131
Title	Scenes - separated from Video camera settings
Changes	for Tusbasa; text changes made; added the Soft Snap setting
Version	5
Author	JessicaL
Status	Released*

## Video resolution

Adjust the video resolution for different formats.



ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-RESOLUTION-SETTING-HD

**1280×720(16:9)** [cam\_strings\_video\_resolution\_1280]  
HD (High Definition) format with 16:9 aspect ratio. 1280×720 pixels.



ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-RESOLUTION-SETTING-VGA

**640×480(4:3)** [cam\_strings\_video\_resolution\_vga]  
VGA format with 4:3 aspect ratio. 640×480 pixels.



ID:

**320×240(4:3)** [cam\_strings\_video\_resolution\_320\_240]  
Quarter VGA format with 4:3 aspect ratio. 320×240 pixels.



ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-RESOLUTION-SETTING-MMS

**176×144(11:9)** [cam\_strings\_video\_resolution\_mms]  
Record videos suitable for sending in multimedia messages. The recording time of this video format is limited to fit in a multimedia message.

GUID	GUID-7E69C4F2-7B4D-46FF-8C9B-7026429FB366
Title	Video size - separated from Video camera settings
Changes	For JB update 3: Lotus.not in use.
Version	1.1.2
Author	XuCindy
Status	Draft

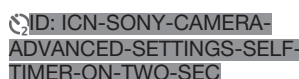
## Self-timer

With the self-timer you can record a video without holding the device. Use it to record group videos where everyone can be in the video. You can also use the self-timer to avoid shaking the camera when recording videos.



ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-ADVANCED-SETTINGS-SELF-TIMER-ON


**On (10 sec.)** [cam\_strings\_advanced\_setting\_selftimer\_duration\_txt]  
Set a 10-second delay from when you tap the camera screen until the video begins to record.



ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-ADVANCED-SETTINGS-SELF-TIMER-ON-TWO-SEC

**On (2 sec.)** [cam\_strings\_advanced\_setting\_self\_timer\_two\_sec\_txt]  
Set a 2-second delay from when you tap the camera screen until the video begins to record.




 ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-ADVANCED-SETTINGS-SELF-TIMER-OFF

Off [\[cam\\_strings\\_advanced\\_setting\\_off\\_txt\]](#)  
The video begins to record as soon as you tap the camera screen.


GUID	GUID-D819F98C-8A85-44F0-90E5-2478C221D341
Title	Self-timer - separated from Video camera settings
Changes	for Pollux; term change made
Version	2
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released

## Quick launch


Use Quick launch settings to launch the camera from the lock screen. If the device is in sleep mode of camera, press the camera key.

 ID: ICN-SONY-SEMC-SLIDING-TAB-FASTCAPTURE-PRESSED

**Launch and capture** [\[cam\\_strings\\_fast\\_capturing\\_launch\\_and\\_capture\\_photo\\_txt\]](#)  
By pressing and holding down the camera key, the first photo is captured immediately after the camera is launched from sleep mode.

 ID: ICN-SONY-SEMC-SLIDING-TAB-FASTCAM-NORMAL

**Launch only (still camera)** [\[cam\\_strings\\_fast\\_capturing\\_launch\\_only\\_photo\\_txt\]](#)  
By pressing and holding down the camera key, the still camera is launched from sleep mode.

 ID: ICN-SONY-SEMC-SLIDING-TAB-FASTCAM-VIDEOREC-NORMAL

**Launch and record video** [\[cam\\_strings\\_fast\\_capturing\\_launch\\_and\\_capture\\_video\\_txt\]](#)  
By pressing and holding down the camera key, the first video is shot immediately after the camera video camera is launched from sleep mode.

 ID: ICN-SONY-SEMC-SLIDING-TAB-FASTCAM-VIDEO-PRESSED

**Launch only (video camera)** [\[cam\\_strings\\_fast\\_capturing\\_launch\\_only\\_video\\_txt\]](#)  
By pressing and holding down the camera key, the video camera is launched from sleep mode.


 ID: ICN-SONY-CAM-LAUNCH-CAPTURE-OFF

Off [\[cam\\_strings\\_advanced\\_setting\\_off\\_txt\]](#)


GUID	GUID-A3E21A95-B04C-455D-95F0-7A70EAA0EF9D
Title	Quick launch
Changes	For Odin and Yuga: modify the description of quick launch
Version	4
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released*

## Focus mode

The focus setting controls which part of a video should be sharp. When continuous autofocus is on, the camera keeps adjusting focus so that the area within the white focus frame stays sharp.

 ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-FOCUS-MODE-SINGLE-AF

**Single autofocus** [\[cam\\_strings\\_focus\\_mode\\_single\\_af\\_txt\]](#)  
The camera automatically focuses on the selected subject. Continuous autofocus is on.

 ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-FOCUS-MODE-FACE-DETECTION

**Face detection** [\[cam\\_strings\\_focus\\_mode\\_face\\_detection\\_txt\]](#)  
The camera automatically detects up to five human faces, indicated by frames on the screen. The camera automatically focuses on the nearest face. You can also select which face to focus on by tapping it on the screen. When you tap the camera screen, a green frame shows which face is selected and in focus. Face detection cannot be used for all scene types. Continuous autofocus is on.

GUID	GUID-A90913F5-D710-413B-8710-073469C04CB2
Title	Focus mode - separated from Video camera settings
Changes	for Mint; no text changes made; removed the infinity setting
Version	3
Author	JessicaL
Status	Released*

## Exposure value



ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-QUICK-EXPOSURE-LEVEL-TCH

This setting allows you to determine the amount of light in the image you capture. A higher value indicates an increased amount of light.

GUID	GUID-069267FB-9F1C-485A-BE7D-67237399139D
Title	Exposure value - separated from Video camera settings
Changes	For Tsubasa html User guide. Removed not working lines tag.
Version	1.1.1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released

## Video HDR

Use the video HDR (High-Dynamic Range) setting to record a video against strong back light or in conditions where the contrast is sharp. Video HDR compensates for the loss of detail and produces a picture that is representative of both dark and bright areas.

GUID	GUID-65A1A984-7995-4588-A86F-07C76DD284C8
Title	Video HDR - video
Changes	
Version	1
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released

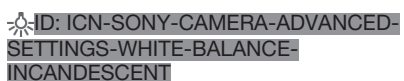
## White balance

The white balance setting adjusts the colour balance according to the lighting conditions.



WB AUTO ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-ADVANCED-SETTINGS-WHITE-BALANCE-AUTO

**Auto** [cam\_strings\_advanced\_setting\_white\_balance\_auto\_txt]  
Adjust the colour balance automatically to the lighting conditions.



ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-ADVANCED-SETTINGS-WHITE-BALANCE-INCANDESCENT

**Incandescent** [cam\_strings\_advanced\_setting\_white\_balance\_incandescent\_txt]  
Adjusts the colour balance for warm lighting conditions, such as under light bulbs.



ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-ADVANCED-SETTINGS-WHITE-BALANCE-FLUORESCENT

**Fluorescent** [cam\_strings\_advanced\_setting\_white\_balance\_fluorescent\_txt]  
Adjust the colour balance for fluorescent lighting.



ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-ADVANCED-SETTINGS-WHITE-BALANCE-DAYLIGHT

**Daylight** [cam\_strings\_advanced\_setting\_white\_balance\_day\_light\_txt]  
Adjust the colour balance for sunny outdoor conditions.



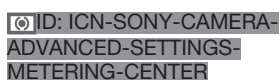
ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-ADVANCED-SETTINGS-WHITE-BALANCE-CLOUDY

**Cloudy** [cam\_strings\_advanced\_setting\_white\_balance\_cloudy\_txt]  
Adjust the colour balance for a cloudy sky.

GUID	GUID-893AE629-E040-473B-A646-DDD824381DCC
Title	White balance - separated from Video camera settings
Changes	for Tapioca; no text change; separated from Video camera settings
Version	1
Author	JessicaL
Status	Released

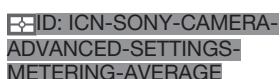
## Metering

This function automatically determines a well-balanced exposure by measuring the amount of light striking the image that you want to capture.



ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-ADVANCED-SETTINGS-METERING-CENTER

**Center** [cam\_strings\_advanced\_setting\_photometry\_center\_txt]  
Adjust the exposure to the centre of the image.



ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-ADVANCED-SETTINGS-METERING-AVERAGE

**Average** [cam\_strings\_advanced\_setting\_photometry\_average\_txt]  
Calculate the exposure based on the amount of light striking the whole image.

● **ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-ADVANCED-SETTINGS-METERING-SPOT**

**Spot** [cam\_strings\_advanced\_setting\_photometry\_spot\_txt]

Adjust the exposure in a very small part of the image that you want to capture.

GUID	GUID-16EA22DD-0E21-451B-9654-5C1DE476B434
Title	Metering - separated from Video camera settings
Changes	For Pollux: delete a note
Version	2
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released

## Image stabiliser

When recording a video, it can be difficult to hold the device steady. The stabiliser helps you by compensating for small movements of the hand.

GUID	GUID-BA0386BA-84CF-43F3-8E8E-C2FB51CED9F2
Title	Image stabiliser - separated from Video camera settings
Changes	for Pollux; term change made
Version	2
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released

## Geotagging

Tag videos with details of where you took them.

📍 **ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-GEOTAG-ON**

**On** [cam\_strings\_advanced\_setting\_on\_txt]

When geotagging is turned on, the approximate geographical location is added to videos when you take them. To use geotagging, you must enable location features from the **Settings** [settings\_label] menu. For geotags to be added to a video, the location must be determined before you take the video. Your location is determined when **ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-GEOTAG-ON** appears on the camera screen. When your device is searching for your position, **ID: ICN-SONY-STATUSBAR-GPS-ON** appears.

📍 **ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-GEOTAG-OFF**

**Off** [cam\_strings\_advanced\_setting\_off\_txt]

When geotagging is turned off, you cannot view the location where you took a video.

GUID	GUID-B4018131-CF65-4509-819D-BC177282DA8E
Title	Geotagging - separated from video camera settings
Changes	JB update 3
Version	1
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released

## Microphone

Select whether to pick up the surrounding sound when recording videos.

GUID	GUID-D1755DC3-3516-47EA-8FCB-919814BC27EB
Title	Microphone - separated from Video camera settings
Changes	for Tapioca; no text change; separated from Video camera settings
Version	1
Author	JessicaL
Status	Released

## Touch capture

Identify a particular focus area by touching the camera screen with your finger. The photo is taken as soon as you release your finger. This setting is only available when focus mode is set to touch focus.

📍 **ID: ICN-SONY-CAMERA-ADVANCED-SETTINGS-TOUCH-CAPTURE-ON**

**On** [cam\_strings\_advanced\_setting\_on\_txt]

📍 **ID: ICN-SONY-EDREAM-CAM-ADV-SETTINGS-TOUCH-CAP-OFF**

**Off** [cam\_strings\_advanced\_setting\_off\_txt]

GUID	GUID-6F453966-3773-4C86-8B4D-7BA72FEDC47E
Title	Touch capture - for both Still and video camera settings

<i>Changes</i>	
<i>Version</i>	1
<i>Author</i>	XuCindy
<i>Status</i>	Released

## Shutter sound

Choose to turn on or turn off the shutter sound when you record a video.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-41F4BDE1-4227-4DD9-ADA6-CB37D174758C
<i>Title</i>	Shutter sound - separated from Video camera settings
<i>Changes</i>	For Tapioca; no text change; separated from Video camera settings
<i>Version</i>	1
<i>Author</i>	JessicaL
<i>Status</i>	Released

## Data storage

You can choose to save your data either to a removable SD card or to your device's internal storage.

 **ID: ICN-SONY-CAM-DATA-INTERNAL-STORAGE** **Internal storage** [\[spb\\_strings\\_gen\\_emmc\\_txt\]](#)  
Photos or videos are saved on the device memory.

 **ID: ICN-SONY-CAM-DATA-SD-CARD** **SD card** [\[spb\\_strings\\_gen\\_sd\\_card\\_txt\]](#)  
Photos or videos are saved on the SD card.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-86D0BE1A-D724-4F2A-A75F-87BD85ADF4D6
<i>Title</i>	Data storage - separated from both Still and Video camera settings
<i>Changes</i>	
<i>Version</i>	1
<i>Author</i>	XuCindy
<i>Status</i>	Released

# Album

Indexterm: "Album"	
Indexterm: "photos"	
Sub-indexterm: "viewing"	
Indexterm: "videos"	
Sub-indexterm: "viewing"	
GUID	GUID-C9C9DC20-84F0-433F-9E0C-58124EC6DC3F
Title	Album - heading only
Changes	
Version	1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released

## About Album

Indexterm: "Album"	
Indexterm: "photos"	
Sub-indexterm: "viewing"	
Indexterm: "videos"	
Sub-indexterm: "viewing"	

Use Album to view photos and play videos that you've taken with your camera, or to view similar content that you've saved to your device. You can add geotags to your photos and videos, and then view them on a world map. In Album, you can also view photos and videos that you've uploaded to an online service, for example, to a Picasa™ web album.

From Album, you can share your favourite photos and videos with friends via Bluetooth™ wireless technology, email, messaging and various online services. You can also perform basic editing tasks on photos and set them as wallpaper or contact pictures. For more information, see *Connecting your device to a computer* on page 186.

GUID	GUID-0C711360-DD0E-4CB8-ACA5-9A658EE68F7D
Title	About Album
Changes	
Version	1
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released*

## Album tab overview


The following tabs are available in Album:

- **Pictures** [album\_tab\_pictures\_txt] – view all photos and videos saved to the memory card.
- **Maps** [album\_tab\_places\_txt] – view your geotagged photos and video clips on a world map.
- **Online** [album\_tab\_online\_txt] – view your online albums.

GUID	GUID-CB4D15AC-CB5D-4CD6-8A9F-615E6C43ACB9
Title	Album tab overview
Changes	For Nozoimi ICS. only changed a label from Camera to Pictures.
Version	1.1.1
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released

## To open Album

Indexterm: "photo albums"	
Sub-indexterm: "viewing"	
Indexterm: "video albums"	
Sub-indexterm: "viewing"	
Indexterm: "Album"	
Sub-indexterm: "opening"	

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap Album [album\_app\_name\_txt].

- 💡 If the screen orientation does not change automatically when you turn your device sideways, mark the **Auto-rotate screen** [accelerometer\_title] checkbox under **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] > **Display** [display\_settings\_title].

GUID	GUID-70F2F687-424C-4551-884F-DE2FADD2DCF3
------	---

<i>Title</i>	To open Album
<i>Changes</i>	Valid from Pollux only Device condition added
<i>Version</i>	4
<i>Author</i>	PengLeon
<i>Status</i>	Released

## Viewing photos and videos in the Pictures [\[album\\_tab\\_pictures\\_txt\]](#) tab

Indexterm: "Album"  
 Indexterm: "Album"  
 Sub-indexterm: "viewing local content"

In the Pictures [\[album\\_tab\\_pictures\\_txt\]](#) tab in Album, you can view your photos and videos in thumbnails in a grid view.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-7CFC5610-3AFB-4143-A0DD-256EAF1AA6FF
<i>Title</i>	Viewing your photos and videos in Pictures tab
<i>Changes</i>	Device Term Change Valid from Odin and Yuga (List view related contents removed)
<i>Version</i>	5
<i>Author</i>	PengLeon
<i>Status</i>	Released

## Overview of Pictures [\[album\\_tab\\_pictures\\_txt\]](#) tab

Indexterm: "Album"  
 Sub-indexterm: "pictures"  
 Sub-indexterm: "viewing"  
 Sub-sub indexterm: "photos and videos"



**ID: SCR-SONY-ALBUM-PICTURE-GRID-OVERVIEW-WVGA**




- 1 Grid view of photos and videos.
- 2 View menu options.
- 3 Scroll up or down to view content.
- 4 Tap a photo or video to view it.
- 5 The date and number of items in the group below.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-E6EC185C-6CDA-42FF-B58C-7FA96CDD8695
<i>Title</i>	Overview of Picture tab
<i>Changes</i>	Device Term Change.
<i>Version</i>	7
<i>Author</i>	RongrongZ
<i>Status</i>	Released*

### To view photos and videos in grid view

Indexterm: "photos"

Sub-indexterm: "viewing"  
 Sub-indexterm: "photo viewer"  
 Indexterm: "videos"  
 Sub-indexterm: "viewing"

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
  - 2 Find and tap **Album** [album\_app\_name\_txt]. All photos and videos are displayed in a chronologically ordered grid. Videos are indicated by  ID: ICN-SONY-SEMC-MUSIC-PLAY-NORMAL.
  - 3 Tap a photo or video to view it.
  - 4 Flick left to view the next photo or video. Flick right to view the previous photo or video.
-  If the screen orientation does not change automatically when you turn your device sideways, mark the **Auto-rotate screen** [accelerometer\_title] checkbox under **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] > **Display** [display\_settings\_title].

GUID	GUID-9E9154B9-0E5F-460C-9ED7-78C88771BEC4
Title	To view photos and videos in grid view
Changes	Valid from Pollux only Device condition added
Version	11
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### To change the size of the thumbnails in Album



Indexterm: "Album"  
 Sub-indexterm: "thumbnail size"

- When viewing thumbnails of photos and videos in Album, spread two fingers apart to zoom in, or pinch two fingers together to zoom out.

GUID	GUID-CEAF453F-B0F8-41B0-822B-CA2B33FDC1FF
Title	To change the size of the photo and video thumbnails in Album
Changes	From Nozomi ICS (edream 6.0). Text changed.
Version	3
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released

### To work with batches of photos or videos in Album

Indexterm: "photos"  
 Sub-indexterm: "viewing"  
 Sub-indexterm: "selecting"  
 Indexterm: "videos"  
 Sub-indexterm: "viewing"  
 Sub-indexterm: "selecting"

- 1 When viewing thumbnails of photos and videos in Album, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU, then tap **Select items** [album\_options\_mark\_mode\_txt].
  - 2 Tap the items you want to work with. Selected items are indicated by a blue frame.
  - 3 Use the tools in the toolbar at the top of the screen to work with your selected items.
-  To activate selection mode, you can also touch and hold an item until its frame turns blue. Then you can tap other items to select them.

GUID	GUID-5199D8F4-B9B0-4E8C-89D7-56DB01A9A010
Title	To work with batches of photos or videos
Changes	From Nozomi ICS (edream 6.1). Text changed.
Version	6
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released

## Viewing photos and videos in the My albums [album\_tab\_my\_albums\_txt] tab

Indexterm: "Album"  
 Indexterm: "Album"

The following tiles are available in My albums:

- **Camera albums** [album\_divider\_camera\_albums\_txt] – view all photos and videos taken with your device's camera.

- **Internal memory** [album\_divider\_internalmemory\_albums\_txt] – view all photos and videos saved to your device's internal storage.
- **My SD card** [album\_divider\_memorycard\_albums\_txt] – view all photos and videos saved to a removable memory card in your device.

GUID	GUID-E2F2FDE5-56BD-41EF-8054-92E5AEB1ABDA
Title	Viewing photos and videos in My albums tab
Changes	Valid from Huashan (only changed Tab to Tile according to TID comments)
Version	2
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released*

## Overview of My albums [album\_tab\_my\_albums\_txt] tab

Indexterm: "Album"
Sub-indexterm: "My albums"
Sub-indexterm: "viewing"
Sub-sub indexterm: "photos and videos"






ID: SCR-SONY-ALBUM-MY ALBUM-LIST-OVERVIEW-WVGA

- 1 View photos and videos using the PlayMemories online service.
- 2 View photos and videos on Facebook™.
- 3 View photos and videos in Picasa™.
- 4 View all photos and videos saved to the removable memory card.
- 5 View all photos and videos saved to your device's internal storage.
- 6 View all photos with faces.
- 7 View your photos in globe mode.
- 8 View your photos on a map.
- 9 View all photos and videos taken with your device's camera.

GUID	GUID-6D2E2C78-45CA-4F7E-9EE9-3E0A8E7A2B3D
Title	Overview of My albums tab
Changes	valid from Togari only the Face feature description added
Version	5
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released






### To view content in list view in the Camera albums tile

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
  - 2 Find and tap **Album** [album\_app\_name\_txt] > **My albums** [album\_tab\_my\_albums\_txt] > **Camera albums** [album\_divider\_camera\_albums\_txt].
  - 3 Tap a folder that you want to open. The folder's content appears in a chronologically ordered grid. Videos are indicated by  ID: ICN-SONY-SEMC-MUSIC-PLAY-NORMAL.
  - 4 Tap a photo or video to view it.
  - 5 Flick left to view the next photo or video. Flick right to view the previous photo or video.
-  If the screen orientation does not change automatically when you turn your device sideways, mark the **Auto-rotate screen** [accelerometer\_title] checkbox under **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] > **Display** [display\_settings\_title].




GUID	GUID-ED17CFDD-41FA-443C-9995-B8DCAA048F5F
Title	To view content in list view in the Camera albums tile
Changes	Valid from Pollux only Device condition added
Version	3
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### To view content in list view in the Internal memory tile

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
  - 2 Find and tap **Album** [album\_app\_name\_txt] > **My albums** [album\_tab\_my\_albums\_txt] > **Internal memory** [album\_divider\_internalmemory\_albums\_txt].
  - 3 Tap a folder that you want to open. The folder's content appears in a chronologically ordered grid. Videos are indicated by  ID: ICN-SONY-SEMC-MUSIC-PLAY-NORMAL.
  - 4 Tap a photo or video to view it.
  - 5 Flick left to view the next photo or video. Flick right to view the previous photo or video.
-  If the screen orientation does not change automatically when you turn your device sideways, mark the **Auto-rotate screen** [accelerometer\_title] checkbox under **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] > **Display** [display\_settings\_title].

GUID	GUID-CEB86E94-D783-4941-BDE0-DCF7022825D3
Title	To view content in list view in the Internal memory tile
Changes	Valid from Pollux only Device condition added
Version	3
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released


### To view content in list view in the My SD card tile

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
  - 2 Find and tap **Album** [album\_app\_name\_txt] > **My albums** [album\_tab\_my\_albums\_txt] > **My SD card** [album\_divider\_memorycard\_albums\_txt].
  - 3 Tap a folder that you want to open. The folder's content appears in a chronologically ordered grid. Videos are indicated by  ID: ICN-SONY-SEMC-MUSIC-PLAY-NORMAL.
  - 4 Tap a photo or video to view it.
  - 5 Flick left to view the next photo or video. Flick right to view the previous photo or video.
-  If the screen orientation does not change automatically when you turn your device sideways, mark the **Auto-rotate screen** [accelerometer\_title] checkbox under **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] > **Display** [display\_settings\_title].

GUID	GUID-39256779-538C-4305-9C60-D8A86F2E8398
Title	To view content in list view in the My SD card tile
Changes	Valid from Pollux only Device condition added
Version	3

Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### To view photos with faces in list view in the Faces tile

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
  - 2 Find and tap Album [album\_app\_name\_txt] > My albums [album\_tab\_my\_albums\_txt] > Faces [album\_dashboard\_tile\_faces\_txt].
  - 3 Tap a folder that you want to open. The folder's content appears in a chronologically ordered grid.
  - 4 Tap a photo to view it.
  - 5 Flick left to view the next photo. Flick right to view the previous photo.
- 💡 If the screen orientation does not change automatically when you turn your device sideways, mark the Auto-rotate screen [accelerometer\_title] checkbox under Settings [settings\_label\_launcher] > Display [display\_settings\_title].

GUID	GUID-3D1914BE-78F3-43BB-9C54-1668AFC9D076
Title	To view photos with faces in list view in the Face tile
Changes	Valid from Pollux only Device condition added
Version	2
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### Working with photos in Album

You can edit photos in Album. For example, you can crop photos, associate them with contacts, or use them as wallpaper.

GUID	GUID-ADC46697-50D7-4C66-978F-F384F4DA0D8D
Title	Working with photos in Album
Changes	From Nozomi ICS (eDream 6.1). No text change. Only changed app's name from Gallery to Album.
Version	4
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released

### To zoom a photo


Indexterm: "photos"  
Sub-indexterm: "zooming"  
Indexterm: "zooming"  
Sub-indexterm: "photos"

- When you are viewing a photo, double-tap the screen to zoom in. Double-tap again to zoom out.
- When you are viewing a photo, spread two fingers apart to zoom in, or pinch two fingers together to zoom out.

GUID	GUID-FA6FB193-0FB8-4C87-9768-B43CEFBA44A0
Title	To zoom a photo
Changes	Changed from edream 6.0
Version	6
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released

### To watch a slideshow of your photos

Indexterm: "slideshow"  
Indexterm: "photos"  
Sub-indexterm: "slideshow"

- 1 When you are viewing a photo, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU, then tap Slideshow [album\_option\_slideshow\_txt] to start playing all the photos in an album.
- 2 Tap a photo to end the slideshow.

GUID	GUID-ED692E31-B1E1-4A66-BA4A-3E41B1CAC491
Title	To watch a slideshow of your photos
Changes	From Nozomi ICS (eDream 6.1). Text changed in step 1.
Version	5
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released*

## To watch a slideshow of your photos with music

Indexterm: "Album"  
 Sub-indexterm: "SensMe™ slideshow"  
 Indexterm: "photos"  
 Sub-indexterm: "SensMe™ slideshow"

- 1 When you are viewing a photo, tap the screen to display the toolbars, then tap **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU** > **SensMe™ slideshow** [album\_options\_sensme\_pictures\_txt] .
- 2 Select the music and theme that you want to use for the slideshow, then tap **ID: ICN-SONY-SEMC-MUSIC-PLAY-NORMAL**. The Album application analyses your photos and uses SensMe™ music data to play a slideshow.
- 3 To pause playing, tap the screen to display the controls, then tap **ID: ICN-SONY-SEMC-MUSIC-PAUSE-NORMAL**.

GUID	GUID-909BEA45-DC15-4EC4-AB19-328F878A9060
Title	To watch a slideshow of your photos with music
Changes	Valid for Xperia Care
Version	1.1.1
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

## To rotate a photo

Indexterm: "rotating"  
 Sub-indexterm: "photos"  
 Indexterm: "photos"  
 Sub-indexterm: "rotating"

- 1 When you are viewing a photo, tap **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**.
- 2 Select **Rotate left** [album\_option\_rotate\_left\_txt] or **Rotate right** [album\_option\_rotate\_right\_txt] . The photo is saved in the new orientation.

GUID	GUID-FC0207B6-9145-4A5C-87BC-01B5969CC3D1
Title	To rotate a photo
Changes	From Nozomi ICS (edream 6.1). Tex reused from released topics.
Version	5
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released*

## To crop a photo

Indexterm: "photos"  
 Sub-indexterm: "cropping"  
 Indexterm: "cropping"  
 Sub-indexterm: "photos"  
 Indexterm: "resizing"  
 Sub-indexterm: "photos"

- 1 When you are viewing a photo, tap the screen to display the toolbars, then tap **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU** > **Edit photo** [album\_options\_edit\_photo\_txt] > **ID: ICN-SONY-ALBUM-CROP** > **Crop** [album\_option\_crop\_txt] .
- 2 To adjust the crop frame, touch and hold the edge of the crop frame. When the squares at the edges disappear, drag inward or outward to resize the frame.
- 3 To resize all sides of the crop frame at the same time, touch and hold one of the four corners to make the squares at the edges disappear, then drag the corner accordingly.
- 4 To move the crop frame to another area of the photo, touch and hold inside the frame, then drag it to the desired position.
- 5 To save a copy of the photo as you cropped it, tap **Save** [album\_options\_save\_txt] . The original uncropped version remains on your device.

GUID	GUID-C8189FB3-D445-4117-B326-AEDB6E254373
Title	To crop a photo
Changes	Valid from Pollux only changed the way to open Crop
Version	12
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

## To use a photo

Indexterm: "photos"

Sub-indexterm: "using as"

- 1 When you are viewing a photo, tap the screen to display the toolbars, then tap **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU** > **Use as** [album\_options\_use\_as\_txt] .
- 2 Select an option from the list that appears.
- 3 Follow the relevant steps to use the photo.

GUID	GUID-1EF627DD-3E4B-49E7-8AF0-E8133D8D4248
Title	To use a photo - for Sony Tablet and Walkman
Changes	For Tablet and Walkman only. Because in Tablet and Walkman devices it's "Contact photo" instead of "Contact picture."
Version	1
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released

### To edit a photo

Indexterm: "photos"  
Sub-indexterm: "editing"  
Indexterm: "editing"  
Sub-indexterm: "photos"

- When you are viewing a photo, tap **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**, then tap **Edit photo** [album\_options\_edit\_photo\_txt] .

GUID	GUID-3256B4EF-EC78-4F73-BB9F-2574825B4B99
Title	To edit a photo
Changes	From Nozomi ICS (edream 6.1).
Version	1
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released*

### To apply a picture effect to a photo

Indexterm: "photos"  
Sub-indexterm: "cropping"  
Indexterm: "cropping"  
Sub-indexterm: "photos"  
Indexterm: "resizing"  
Sub-indexterm: "photos"

- 1 When you are viewing a photo, tap the screen to display the toolbars, then tap **Edit photo** [album\_options\_edit\_photo\_txt] > **FX ID: ICN-SONY-ALBUM-EDIT-FILTER**.
- 2 Select an option.
- 3 To save a copy of the photo that you applied the effect to, tap **Save** [album\_options\_save\_txt] . The original unchanged version remains on your device.

GUID	GUID-1D6C2B88-4A95-4AAE-AA9E-16AECFCCD042
Title	To apply a picture effect to a photo
Changes	
Version	1
Author	PengLeon
Status	Draft

### To make a photo more beautiful with advanced settings

Indexterm: "photos"  
Sub-indexterm: "editing"  
Indexterm: "editing"  
Sub-indexterm: "photos"


- 1 When you are viewing a photo, tap the screen to display the toolbars, then tap **Edit photo** [album\_options\_edit\_photo\_txt] > **ID: ICN-SONY-ALBUM-EDIT-FACE-CORRECTION**.
- 2 Select an option.
- 3 To save a copy of the photo that you applied the setting to, tap **Save** [album\_options\_save\_txt] . The original unchanged version remains on your device.

GUID	GUID-07A7F9DD-010A-403E-9F86-A9576C8AA734
Title	To make a photo more beautiful
Changes	
Version	1
Author	PengLeon
Status	Draft

### To set the light amount of colours in a photo

Indexterm: "photos"  
Sub-indexterm: "editing"  
Indexterm: "setting"



Sub-indexterm: "light amount"

- 1 When you are viewing a photo, tap the screen to display the toolbars, then tap **Edit photo** [album\_options\_edit\_photo\_txt] >  **ID: ICN-SONY-ALBUM-EDIT-EXPOSURE**.
- 2 Select an option.
- 3 To save a copy of the photo that you applied the light setting to, tap **Save** [album\_options\_save\_txt]. The original unchanged version remains on your device.

GUID	GUID-686F7515-649E-421F-B93B-97C5B2523497
Title	To set the light amount of colors in a photo
Changes	
Version	1
Author	PengLeon
Status	Draft

### To set the saturation level of colours in a photo


Indexterm: "photos"  
Sub-indexterm: "saturation level"  
Indexterm: "setting"  
Sub-indexterm: "photos"

- 1 When you are viewing a photo, tap the screen to display the toolbars, then tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU** > **Edit photo** [album\_options\_edit\_photo\_txt] >  **ID: ICN-SONY-ALBUM-EDIT-COLOUR-ADJUSTMENT**.
- 2 Select an option.
- 3 To save a copy of the photo in which you set the saturation level of colours, tap **Save** [album\_options\_save\_txt]. The original uncropped version remains on your device.

GUID	GUID-252B51B6-E5F7-4224-91A1-B97F7DA007B4
Title	To set the saturation level of colors in a photo
Changes	
Version	1
Author	PengLeon
Status	Draft

### To share a photo




Indexterm: "photos"  
Sub-indexterm: "sharing"  
Indexterm: "photos"  
Indexterm: "sharing"  
Sub-indexterm: "photos"

- 1 When you are viewing a photo, tap the screen to display the toolbars, then tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-GALLERY-SHARE**.
- 2 In the menu that opens, tap the application that you want to use to share the photo, then follow the steps to send it.

GUID	GUID-8FD74D8D-4AAA-41BA-B121-428EEABE725B
Title	To share a photo
Changes	From Nozomi ICS (edream 6.1). Text changed .
Version	7
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released

### To add a geotag to a photo

Indexterm: "photos"  
Sub-indexterm: "adding a geotag"

- 1 When you are viewing a photo, tap the screen to display the toolbars, then tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-ACTION-LAYER-GEOTAG-PREVIEW-BG** to open the map screen.
  - 2 Find and tap the desired location to put the photo on the map.
  - 3 To adjust the location of the photo, tap the location on the map to where you want to move the photo.
  - 4 When you are finished, tap **OK** [gui\_ok\_txt] to save the geotag and return to the photo viewer.
-  When a photo is geotagged,  **ID: ICN-SONY-ACTION-LAYER-GEOTAG-BG** appears along with location information. You can tap this icon to view the photo on a map.

GUID	GUID-94B6D803-A114-4058-AF8D-CB219961DD33
Title	To add a geotag when viewing a photo
Changes	From Nozomi ICS (edream 6.1).

Version	1
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released

### To delete a photo

Indexterm: "photos"  
 Sub-indexterm: "deleting"  
 Indexterm: "deleting"  
 Sub-indexterm: "photos"

- 1 When you are viewing a photo, tap the screen to display the toolbars, then tap **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU** > **Delete** [album\_options\_delete\_txt] .
- 2 Tap **OK** [gui\_ok\_txt] .

GUID	GUID-1EECE26E-E89A-4E66-8B11-9441E0D8B89D
Title	To delete a photo
Changes	Valid from Taoshan changed the way to delete photo
Version	5
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### Analysing photos with faces in Album

You can analyse photos with faces saved to your devices. For example, you can add and edit names for faces.

GUID	GUID-CAF912E8-705E-4454-9B93-1DA407255083
Title	Analysing photos with faces
Changes	
Version	1
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### To analyse photos with faces

Indexterm: "photos"  
 Sub-indexterm: "analysing"  
 Indexterm: "analysing"  
 Sub-indexterm: "photos"

- 1 In the Faces tile, tap **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU** > **Photo analysis** [mslide-show\_strings\_show\_op\_photo\_analysis\_setting\_txt] .
- 2 Tap **Activate** [gui\_activate\_txt] .

GUID	GUID-7AC9032C-AD11-470E-9D87-D3C3FF9458EF
Title	To analyse photos with faces
Changes	Valid from Togari only label changed no text updated
Version	2
Author	PengLeon
Status	Draft

### To name a face

Indexterm: "faces"  
 Sub-indexterm: "editing"  
 Indexterm: "editing"  
 Sub-indexterm: "faces"

- 1 In the Faces tile, find and tap the face you want to name in the Unnamed faces folder.
- 2 Tap **Add name** [face\_strings\_faceitem\_btn\_write\_name\_txt] .
- 3 Type a name, then tap **OK** [okay\_action] .

GUID	GUID-09F1ED28-4A6C-48CC-875F-EBA88F566193
Title	To name a face
Changes	
Version	1
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### To edit a face name

Indexterm: "faces"  
 Sub-indexterm: "editing"  
 Indexterm: "editing"

Sub-indexterm: "faces"

- 1 When you are viewing a face in the full screen view, tap the screen to display the toolbars, then tap **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU** > **Edit name tags** [face\_strings\_album\_op\_edit\_tag\_txt] .
- 2 Tap the face name to edit the name.
- 3 Type a name, then tap **OK** [okay\_action] .

GUID	GUID-5F513671-8DE9-4A62-982F-8CAF8EB3D9AB
Title	To edit a face name
Changes	
Version	1
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

## Working with videos in Album

Indexterm: "videos"

Use Album to watch videos that you've taken with the camera, downloaded, or copied to your device. You can also share your videos with friends, for example, by uploading them to online services.

GUID	GUID-51F5D9E3-4BEA-4803-9717-36F071DC30A0
Title	Working with videos
Changes	Device Term Change.
Version	6
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released

### To play a video

Indexterm: "videos"

Sub-indexterm: "playing"

- 1 Open the **Pictures** [album\_tab\_pictures\_txt] tab or the **My albums** [album\_tab\_my\_albums\_txt] tab in Album.
- 2 Using grid view or list view, locate the video that you want to open.
- 3 Tap the video to play it.
- 4 If the playback controls are not displayed, tap the screen to display them. To hide the controls, tap the screen again.

GUID	GUID-F785DB32-33A8-44C6-AD5C-001BC1E7C4A7
Title	To play a video
Changes	Valid for Odin and Yuga (Changed Step 1 "Open the picture and My albums" tab
Version	9
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released*

### To pause a video

Indexterm: "videos"

Sub-indexterm: "pausing"

Indexterm: "video player"

Sub-indexterm: "pausing a video"

- 1 When a video is playing, tap the screen to display the controls.
- 2 Tap **ID: ICN-SONY-SEMC-MUSIC-PAUSE-NORMAL**.

GUID	GUID-2F1D89FD-3370-4BD6-872E-6628B924E265
Title	To pause a video
Changes	ver. 1 Created for Robyn/Mimmi RTL
Version	1
Author	PeterC
Status	Released*

### To fast forward and rewind a video

Indexterm: "videos"

Sub-indexterm: "fast forwarding and rewinding"

- 1 When a video is playing, tap the screen to display the controls.
- 2 Drag the progress bar marker left to rewind, or right to fast forward.

GUID	GUID-A785999B-662F-4020-8B3F-69AAF7D57C5E
Title	To fast forward and rewind a video
Changes	From Nozomi ICS (edream 6.1). No text change. Only removed the tip.
Version	3
Author	RongrongZ

Status	Released
--------	----------

### To adjust the volume of a video

Indexterm: "videos"  
 Sub-indexterm: "adjusting volume"  
 Indexterm: "volume"  
 Sub-indexterm: "adjusting video"

- Press the volume key.

GUID	GUID-27C5332E-2A2B-47EE-AB0C-18F12067FDB8
Title	To adjust the volume of a video
Changes	ver. 2 Created for Robyn/Mimmi RTL
Version	2
Author	PeterC
Status	Released*

### To share a video

Indexterm: "videos"  
 Sub-indexterm: "sharing"  
 Indexterm: "videos"  
 Sub-indexterm: "sending"

- 1 When a video is playing, tap **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**, then tap **Share** [album\_options\_share\_txt] .
  - 2 In the menu that opens, tap the application that you want to use to share the selected video, then follow the relevant steps to send it.
- ! You might not be able to copy, send or transfer copyright-protected items. Also, some items may not send if the file size is too large.

GUID	GUID-5930D392-F898-40B7-9FF0-39EF4F7F23FD
Title	To share a video
Changes	From Nozomi ICS (edream 6.1). Text changed in step 1.
Version	7
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released*

### To delete a video

Indexterm: "videos"  
 Sub-indexterm: "deleting"  
 Indexterm: "deleting"  
 Sub-indexterm: "videos"

- 1 In Album, find the video you want to delete.
- 2 Touch and hold the video to activate selection mode. The frame of the video thumbnail turns blue when it is selected.
- 3 Tap **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU** > **Delete** [album\_options\_delete\_txt] , then tap **OK** [gui\_ok\_txt] .

GUID	GUID-CF190C14-1CF7-499E-84C3-A49C86003422
Title	To delete a video
Changes	Valid from Taoshan changed the way to delete video
Version	8
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### Viewing your photos on a map

Indexterm: "photos"  
 Sub-indexterm: "viewing on a map"

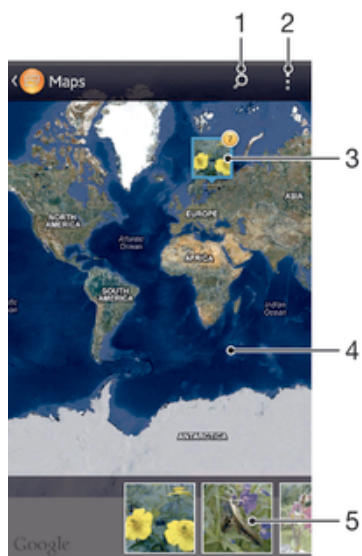
If you enable location detection when taking photos, you can use the information gathered at a later stage. For example, you can view your photos on a map and show friends and family where you were when you took the photo. Adding location information is also referred to as geotagging. When you enable location detection, you can select to use either GPS satellites or wireless networks, or both, to find your position.

GUID	GUID-5F3D09DC-6D63-40EB-AE7D-A1D4B8B0ABE3
Title	Viewing your photos on a map
Changes	Valid from JB Update HTML User Guide only X-ef removed
Version	8.1.2
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released



## Overview of Maps [album\_tab\_places\_txt] tile

Indexterm: "Album"  
 Sub-indexterm: "map"  
 Sub-indexterm: "viewing"  
 Sub-sub indexterm: "photos and videos"



**ID: SCR-SONY-ALBUM-MAP-OVERVIEW-WVGA-WITHMENU**

- 1 Search a location on the map.
- 2 View menu options.
- 3 A group of photos and/or videos geotagged with the same location.
- 4 Double tap to zoom in. Pinch to zoom out. Drag to view different parts of the map.
- 5 Thumbnails of the selected group of photos and/or videos. Tap an item to view it in full screen.

GUID	GUID-D8B29D35-3D56-45A2-8132-19F5EAB3D57C
Title	Overview of Map tile
Changes	Valid from Huashan (only changed Tab to Tile according to TID comments)
Version	6
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released*

### To enable location detection

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] > **Location services** [location\_settings\_title].
- 3 Mark the **GPS satellites** [location\_gps] and/or **Google's location service** [location\_network\_based] checkboxes.

GUID	GUID-97BCD6C5-2465-4164-953E-72EE4716155D
Title	To enable location detection
Changes	From Nozomi ICS (eDream 6.1). Text changed in step 1 and 2.
Version	4
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released

### To view geotagged photos on a map in Album

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
  - 2 Find and tap **Album** [album\_app\_name\_txt] > **My albums** [album\_tab\_my\_albums\_txt] > **Maps** [album\_tab\_places\_txt].
  - 3 Tap a photo to view it in full screen.
  - 4 If several photos were taken at the same location, only one of them appears on the map. The total number of photos appears in the top right corner, for example, **ID: ICN-SONY-ALBUM-PHOTO-GROUP**. To view these photos, tap the cover photo and then tap one of the thumbnails at the bottom of the screen.
- 💡 When viewing a geotagged photo in the photo viewer, you can touch the screen to display the toolbars, then tap **ID: ICN-SONY-ACTION-LAYER-GEOTAG-BG** to view the photo on the map.

GUID	GUID-6ED5D2BE-F4C3-4957-B8EE-544F2EB007F2
Title	To view geotagged photos on a map in Album
Changes	Valid from Odin and Yuga (The path to open Maps changed)
Version	7
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### To view geotagged photos on a globe in Album

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
  - 2 Find and tap **Album** [album\_app\_name\_txt] > **My albums** [album\_tab\_my\_albums\_txt] > **Globe** [album\_dashboard\_file\_globe\_txt].
  - 3 Tap a photo to view it in full screen.
  - 4 If several photos were taken at the same location, only one of them appears on the map. The total number of photos appears in the top right corner, for example, **ID: ICN-SONY-ALBUM-PHOTO-GROUP**. To view these photos, tap the cover photo and then tap one of the thumbnails at the bottom of the screen.
- 💡 When viewing a geotagged photo from the camera application, you can touch the screen to display the toolbars, then tap **ID: ICN-SONY-ACTION-LAYER-GEOTAG-BG** to view the photo on the map.

GUID	GUID-058FF9EC-CDBF-414A-AC0B-2C89C9791CE0
Title	To view geotagged photos in globe view
Changes	
Version	1
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### To add a geotag when viewing the map in Album

- 1 When viewing the map in Album, tap **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**, then tap **Add geotag** [album\_options\_add\_geotag\_txt].
- 2 Find and tap the photo to which you want to add the geotag.
- 3 Tap the desired location on the map to set the geotag, then tap **OK** [gui\_ok\_txt].

GUID	GUID-FFCB4D26-20C3-4693-90EF-C62E7FBE98F7
Title	To add a geotag when viewing the map in Album
Changes	From Nozomi ICS (edream6.1).
Version	1
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released

### To edit the geotag of a photo in Album

- 1 When viewing a photo on the map in Album, touch and hold the photo until its frame turns blue.
  - 2 Drag the photo to the new location.
- 💡 You can also tap the desired location on the map instead of dragging.

GUID	GUID-C563C5E8-4E10-4BD9-A348-08F1A4A400DB
------	---

Title	To edit the geotag of a photo in Album
Changes	From Nozomi ICS (edream 6.1).
Version	1
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released

### To change the map view in Album

- When viewing the map in Album, tap **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**, then select **Classic view** [album\_options\_map\_view\_classic\_txt] or **Satellite view** [album\_options\_map\_view\_satellite\_txt] .

GUID	GUID-000937D7-8E92-43F6-9EBD-157D5D4D21EB
Title	To change the map view in Album
Changes	Valid from Sony United only Globe view removed
Version	3
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

## Viewing online albums

In Album, view the photos and videos that you and your friends have uploaded to online services, such as Picasa™ and Facebook™. You can view comments from your friends and add your own comments as well.

GUID	GUID-B00667D1-883A-41A7-A178-D8B55B1E6021
Title	Viewing your online albums
Changes	Valid from Odin and Yuga (Updated according to functional review comments)
Version	2
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released*

## Overview of online services

Indexterm: "Album"  
 Sub-indexterm: "online albums"  
 Sub-indexterm: "viewing"  
 Sub-sub indexterm: "photos and videos"



**ID: SCR-SONY-ALBUM-ONLINE-OVERVIEW-WVGA-WITHMENU**

1 Active online service.

2 Name of online album.

3 Number of items in the online album.


4 Refresh.

5 View menu options.

GUID	GUID-9DBECC44-0C94-4D50-B44F-B155BBF20D59
Title	Overview of online tab
Changes	Valid from Odin and Yuga (Only Title changed)

Version	4
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released*


### To view and add comments to online album content

- 1 When viewing a photo from an online album, tap the screen to display the toolbars, then tap  ID: ICN-SONY-ALBUM-ONLINE-COMMENT to view the comments.
- 2 To view more comments, scroll down the screen.
- 3 To add your own comments, enter your comments at the bottom of the screen, then tap **Post** [album\_online\_add\_comment\_hint\_txt].

GUID	GUID-EB349C86-E7AC-4B9E-A8C4-E8276B331929
Title	To view and add comments to online album content
Changes	From Nozomi ICS (edream 6.1).
Version	1
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released

### To recommend a photo or video on Facebook™

Indexterm: ""Like" a photo on Facebook™"  
 Indexterm: ""Like" a video on Facebook™"  
 Indexterm: "recommending photos and videos"

- While viewing a photo or video from one of your Facebook™ albums, tap the screen to display the toolbars, then tap  ID: ICN-SONY-ACTIONLAYER-LIKE-OFF to show that you "Like" the item on Facebook™ [Facebook™].

GUID	GUID-34B7D433-85CD-4664-A3AE-951412CE0161
Title	To recommend a photo on Facebook™
Changes	From Nozomi2. Updated index by removing Xperia with Facebook. Replaced "it" with "the item" according to editor's comments.
Version	4
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released*

# Movies

Indexterm: "movies"	
Indexterm: "viewing"	
Sub-indexterm: "movies"	
GUID	GUID-3345E65F-E378-4D4E-A118-76501D206104
Title	Movies - heading only
Changes	
Version	1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released*

## About Movies

Indexterm: "Movies"	
Indexterm: "viewing"	
Sub-indexterm: "Movies"	

Use the Movies application to play movies and other video content that you've saved on your device. The Movies application also helps you get poster art, plot summaries, genre info and director details for each movie. You can also play your movies on other devices that are connected to the same network.

- ! Videos taken with your device's camera are displayed in the Album application, not in the Movies application.

GUID	GUID-34487455-EEAA-4797-A93E-9F5D3FB7F00E
Title	About Movies
Changes	Device term change
Version	2
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released

## Overview of Movies

Indexterm: "Movies"	
---------------------	--



**ID: SCR-SONY-MOVIES-OVERVIEW-WVGA-WITHMENU**

- 1 View menu options
- 2 Browse all movies
- 3 Open the Video Unlimited application
- 4 Browse content on other connected DLNA Certified™ devices

## 5 All video categories available on your device




! Video Unlimited may not be available in all countries or regions.

GUID	GUID-33B65899-D71B-4F7F-9F49-CD7D5F53E95C
Title	Overview of Movies
Changes	For Nicki SS; remove bullets 1&6 for Movies 3.3 (based on V5)
Version	7
Author	Tan Nellie
Status	Draft

## Using Movies

Indexterm: "using Movies"	
GUID	GUID-C5D88595-AEA0-4E12-873D-48921AC9D35F
Title	Using Movies - heading only
Changes	for Huashan; update index term
Version	2
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released

### To play a video in Movies

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL, then find and tap **Movies** [udoc\_trans\_app\_name\_movies].
- 2 Select a video category and browse to the video that you want to play.
- 3 Tap the video you want to select, then tap  ID: ICN-SONY-SEMC-MUSIC-PLAY-NORMAL to play it.
- 4 To display or hide the controls, tap the screen.
- 5 To pause playing, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-SEMC-MUSIC-PAUSE-NORMAL.
- 6 To rewind, drag the progress bar marker left. To fast forward, drag the progress bar marker right.

GUID	GUID-BB3F685B-DC8C-4C9A-8988-347CC7F28D2B
Title	To play a video in Movies
Changes	From Tablet 2012 fall. Updated due to functional change.
Version	2
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released


### To play a video in full screen

- 1 When a video is playing, tap the screen to display the controls.
- 2 Tap  ID: ICN-SONY-MOVIES-FULL-SCREEN.

💡 To play the video in its original size, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-MOVIES-ORIGINAL-SIZE.

GUID	GUID-51B9F0A2-1F73-4BA0-AF3D-204D8040AA98
Title	To play a video in full screen
Changes	For Tablet 2012 fall. Updated due to editor's comments.
Version	2
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released

### To share a video

- 1 When a video is playing, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU, then tap **Share** [share].
- 2 In the menu that opens, tap the application that you want to use to share the selected video, then follow the relevant steps to send it.

GUID	GUID-FA1344A1-1D81-4746-8FC6-5ECD464F44E6
Title	To share a video
Changes	For Tablet 2012 fall. Updated according to editor's comments.
Version	2
Author	RongrongZ
Status	Released*

## To get movie information manually

- 1 Make sure your phone has an active data connection.
  - 2 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**, then find and tap **Movies** [udoc\_trans\_app\_name\_movies].
  - 3 Tap **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**, then make sure that the **Get video details** [online\_mode\_option\_info] checkbox is marked.
  - 4 Select a video category and browse to the video for which you want to get information.
  - 5 Touch and hold the movie for which you want to get information, then tap **Search for info** [gracernote\_option\_lookup\_info] in the list that appears.
  - 6 In the search field, enter keywords for the video, then tap the confirm key on the keyboard. All matches are displayed in a list.
  - 7 Select a search result, then tap **Done** [gui\_done\_txt]. The download of the information begins.
- ! You also get information about newly added videos automatically when the Movies application is opened and the **Get video details** [online\_mode\_option\_info] checkbox is marked. Data transmission charges may apply.
- 💡 If the downloaded information is not correct, tap **ID: ICN-SONY-VIDEO-DETAILS** and search again using different keywords.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-C90DB6C6-1213-4A7F-B71E-0EFA1B841361
<i>Title</i>	To get movie information manually
<i>Changes</i>	Customized for Tablet. Added condition to change "phone" to "device". Editorially approved except step 6/note/tip.
<i>Version</i>	2
<i>Author</i>	RongrongZ
<i>Status</i>	Released*

## To clear information about a video

Indexterm: "movies"  
Sub-indexterm: "clearing video information"

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**, then find and tap **Movies** [udoc\_trans\_app\_name\_movies].
- 2 Select a video category and browse to the video that you want to edit.
- 3 Touch and hold the video thumbnail, then tap **Clear info** [gracernote\_option\_clear\_info].

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-7DC6C771-703A-4944-8C0F-DEE68A90FBD2
<i>Title</i>	To clear information about a video
<i>Changes</i>	for Odin; change step 3
<i>Version</i>	3
<i>Author</i>	Gan Lu
<i>Status</i>	Released*

## To play a video on an external device

- 1 Make sure the devices that you want to share files with are connected to the same **Wi-Fi®** [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] network as your device.
- 2 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**, then find and tap **Movies** [udoc\_trans\_app\_name\_movies] > **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**.
- 3 Tap **Throw** [play\_on\_device], then select a device from the list.
- 4 Select the video that you want to play.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-C5049CCE-C12E-4772-9E8F-1481619786BF
<i>Title</i>	To play a video on an external device
<i>Changes</i>	for Odin & Yuga
<i>Version</i>	1
<i>Author</i>	Gan Lu
<i>Status</i>	Released

### To change the sound settings while a video is playing

- 1 While a video is playing, tap the screen to display the controls.
- 2 Tap **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**, then tap **Sound settings** [[udoc\\_trans\\_movies\\_sound\\_settings](#)].
- 3 Mark the checkboxes for the sound settings that you want to activate.
- 4 When you're finished, tap **OK** [[gui\\_ok\\_txt](#)].

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-2E2A3369-4370-493A-A9AD-8A797853C20A
<i>Title</i>	To change the sound settings when playing a video
<i>Changes</i>	From Tablet 2012 fall models. Movies 2.1. New topic.
<i>Version</i>	1
<i>Author</i>	RongrongZ
<i>Status</i>	Released

### To delete a video

- 1 From your Home screen, tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**, then find and tap **Movies** [[udoc\\_trans\\_app\\_name\\_movies](#)].
- 2 Select a video category and browse to the video that you want to delete.
- 3 Touch and hold the video thumbnail, then tap **Delete** [[video\\_strings\\_delete\\_txt](#)] from the list that appears.
- 4 Tap **Delete** [[video\\_strings\\_delete\\_txt](#)] again to confirm.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-FF4AE431-C65B-4F9C-9E9A-BD782D59D6A6
<i>Title</i>	To delete a video
<i>Changes</i>	From Tablet. Movies 2.1.
<i>Version</i>	1
<i>Author</i>	RongrongZ
<i>Status</i>	Released



# Video Unlimited

Indexterm: "Video Unlimited"	
GUID	GUID-D97D2EE7-6F18-4CCD-89E5-F603425C0B59
Title	Video Unlimited - heading only
Changes	From Togari; text changed; only remove the trademark (TM).
Version	2
Author	Tan Nellie
Status	Draft



## About Video Unlimited

Indexterm: "Video Unlimited"	
Use the Video Unlimited service to rent and purchase videos that you can view not only on your Android device, but also on a PC, PlayStation® Portable (PSP®), PlayStation® 3 or PlayStation® Vita. Select your pick from the latest Hollywood releases, action movies, comedies, classics, and a range of other categories.	

- ! Video Unlimited might not be available in all countries or regions.

GUID	GUID-ECD7AFE6-638C-403E-B141-21012DD658A3
Title	About Video Unlimited
Changes	From Togari; text changed; remove the trademark (TM) and add PlayStation® Vita.
Version	3
Author	Tan Nellie
Status	Draft




### To open Video Unlimited

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-QRIOCITY.

GUID	GUID-A757408D-63DB-4C20-8594-32428F18B21A
Title	To open Qriocity™ Video
Changes	From Togari; text changed; only remove the trademark (TM) as TID requires.
Version	4
Author	Tan Nellie
Status	Draft

## Video Unlimited menu overview

Indexterm: "Video Unlimited"	
Sub-indexterm: "menu overview"	

 ID: ICN-SONY-Y-MENU-ACCOUNT-LIST	View your account information
 ID: ICN-SONY-Y-MENU-SEARCH	Search for a video
 ID: ICN-SONY-Y-QRIOCITY-	View the download status for all your items

MEN U- DOW NLOA DS	
X-ID: ICN- SON Y- MEN U- SETT NGS	View and change settings for your account, purchases, and downloads
ID: ICN- SON Y- QRIO CITY- MEN U- ADD- TO- WISH LIST	
ID: ICN- SON Y- QRIO CITY- MEN U- CLEA R- ALL	Delete all items in your wish list
ID: ICN- SON Y- QRIO CITY- MEN U- DELE TE- WISH LIST	
ID: ICN- SON Y- MEN U- SHAR E	Share information about the current video via a social network, email, Bluetooth or other method
ID: ICN- SON Y- MEN U- INFO- DETA ILS	

! The Video Unlimited menu is dynamic, which means that all options are not always available. For example, the option to delete all items in your wish list is only available when you are viewing the list.

GUID	GUID-A28A9886-9ED6-40A3-89D2-FDDCFD80859E
Title	Qriocity menu overview

<i>Changes</i>	From Togari; text changed; remove the trademark (TM) and all the icons as TID requires.
<i>Version</i>	6
<i>Author</i>	Tan Nellie
<i>Status</i>	Draft

### To open the Video Unlimited menu

- Open Video Unlimited [IA\_APP\_VIDEO\_UNLIMITED], then tap **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-CA8B4FC3-5116-45D0-B3F4-EE8853C45850
<i>Title</i>	To open the Qriocity menu
<i>Changes</i>	From Togari; text changed; only remove the trademark (TM) as TID requires.
<i>Version</i>	5
<i>Author</i>	Tan Nellie
<i>Status</i>	Draft

### Creating a Video Unlimited account

Indexterm: "Video Unlimited"  
Sub-indexterm: "creating an account"

You need to create a Video Unlimited account if you want to buy or rent movies through the Video Unlimited service. If you already have a PlayStation® network account or a Sony Entertainment Network account, then you can use that account instead.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-4F2540B1-5415-4BCE-B849-D61FFDA326B8
<i>Title</i>	Creating an account
<i>Changes</i>	From Togari; text changed; remove the trademark (TM) and add Sony Entertainment Network account as TID requires.
<i>Version</i>	6
<i>Author</i>	Tan Nellie
<i>Status</i>	Draft

### Exploring the Video Unlimited selection

Browse videos by category, or enter text to search for a particular item. You can also choose to preview videos you're interested in.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-B42162CD-C272-454E-8512-EA332CE6C769
<i>Title</i>	Exploring the Qriocity video selection
<i>Changes</i>	From Togari; text changed; only remove the trademark (TM) as TID requires.
<i>Version</i>	5
<i>Author</i>	Tan Nellie
<i>Status</i>	Draft

### Renting or buying a video

Indexterm: "Video Unlimited"  
Sub-indexterm: "buying videos"  
Sub-indexterm: "renting videos"

When you rent a video, you have a fixed amount of time in which to view it. This time period varies from market to market. You can also choose to download a purchased video to most Sony™ devices that are connected to your Video Unlimited account.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-4E75E2C5-7F58-494C-94B1-72FF82C56D64
<i>Title</i>	Renting or buying a video
<i>Changes</i>	From Togari; text changed; only remove the trademark (TM) as TID requires.
<i>Version</i>	5
<i>Author</i>	Tan Nellie
<i>Status</i>	Draft

### Video Unlimited notifications overview

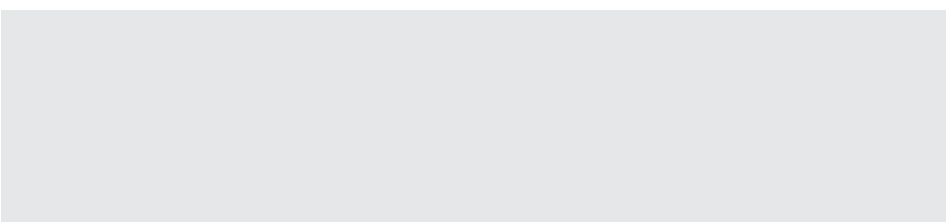
Indexterm: "Video Unlimited"  
Sub-indexterm: "notifications"

When you buy or rent videos, the following notifications may appear:



Downloading of video is completed

QRIO  
CITY-  
NOTI  
FICA  
TION  
S-  
DOW  
NLOA  
DED

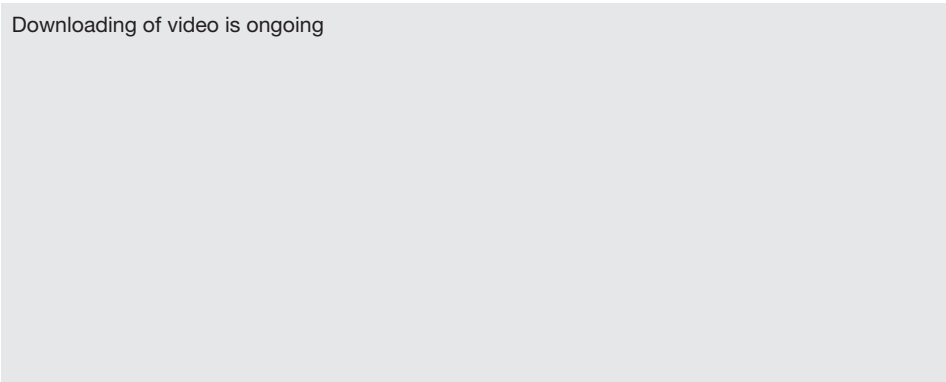


ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
QRIO  
CITY-  
NOTI  
FICA  
TION  
S-  
DOW  
NLOA  
D-  
FAILE  
D

Downloading has failed. You need to check that, for example, your device is connected to a Wi-Fi® network, and that you have enough free space on your memory card or internal storage.

ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
QRIO  
CITY-  
NOTI  
FICA  
TION  
S-  
DOW  
NLOA  
D-  
ONG  
OING

Downloading of video is ongoing

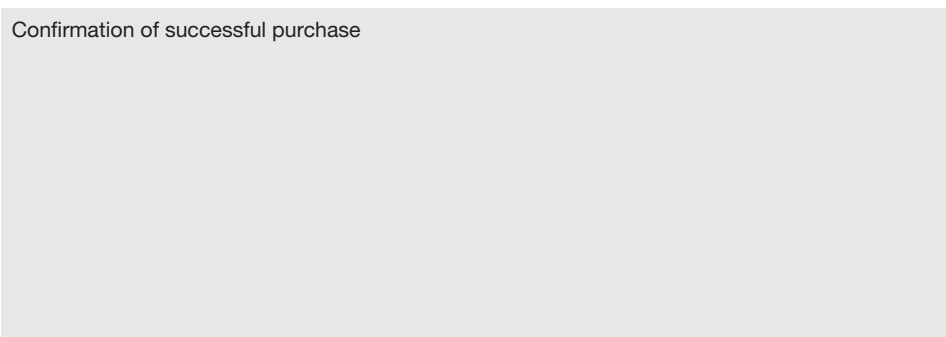


ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
QRIO  
CITY-  
NOTI  
FICA  
TION  
S-  
DOW  
NLOA  
D-  
PAUS  
ED

Downloading is paused

ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
QRIO  
CITY-  
NOTI  
FICA  
TION  
S-  
PUR  
CHAS  
ED

Confirmation of successful purchase



ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
QRIO  
CITY-  
NOTI

Rental countdown period has started

FICA  
TION  
S-  
RENT  
AL-  
EXPI  
RATI  
ON

GUID	GUID-513AECFF-28AE-4B6F-96F7-09BA135AB603
Title	Qriocity notifications overview
Changes	From Togari; text changed; remove the trademark (TM) and add "internal storage" in row2 as TID requires.
Version	7
Author	Tan Nellie
Status	Draft

## Watching a video from Video Unlimited

Indexterm: "Video Unlimited"  
Sub-indexterm: "watching a video"

You can watch your rented or purchased videos on most Sony™ device that are connected to your Video Unlimited account.

GUID	GUID-D009F3D9-7D31-4303-B112-6209F5F27172
Title	Watching a video
Changes	From Togari; text changed; only remove the trademark (TM) as TID requires.
Version	4
Author	Tan Nellie
Status	Draft

## Video menu overview

Indexterm: "Video Unlimited"  
Sub-indexterm: "menu overview"

When you watch a video from Video Unlimited, you can open a menu to get the following options:

🗑️ ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
MEN  
U-  
DELE  
TE

Delete the current video

ℹ️ ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
MEN  
U-  
INFO-  
DETA  
ILS

View information about the current video

🗣️ ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
QRIO  
CITY-  
VIEW  
|  
VIDE  
O-  
LANG  
UAGE

Change the audio language

⋮ ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
QRIO

Change the language of subtitles, or remove subtitles

CITY-  
VIEW  
-  
VIDE  
O-  
SUBT  
ITILE

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-8B523639-1294-4AA6-B0CC-5A4D33AA6A4F
<i>Title</i>	Qriocity video menu overview
<i>Changes</i>	From Togari; text changed; only remove the trademark (TM) as TID requires.
<i>Version</i>	7
<i>Author</i>	Tan Nellie
<i>Status</i>	Draft

# Web browser

Indexterm: "web browser"	
Indexterm: "Internet"	
Sub-indexterm: "web browser"	
GUID	GUID-C6458DD6-EE02-482B-8272-9E1E99BEF6E7
Title	Web browser - heading only
Changes	
Version	1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released

## About the web browser



Indexterm: "web browser"	
Indexterm: "Internet"	
Sub-indexterm: "web browser"	

The Google Chrome™ web browser for Android™ devices comes pre-installed in most markets. Go to <http://support.google.com/chrome> and click the "Chrome for Mobile" link to get more detailed information about how to use this web browser.

- ! Google Chrome™ is not available in all markets.

GUID	GUID-4C8FA0B0-E32C-4AFF-98E4-F6EB2DD99BC4
Title	About the web browser
Changes	updated for devices which don't have web browser but Chrome only
Version	4
Author	LuLinda
Status	Released

## To open the web browser

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-CHROME.

GUID	GUID-9F6D5FF1-0FE2-436C-A909-4616287CCC89
Title	To open the web browser
Changes	Changed for Odin/Yuga: Update the Chrome icon.
Version	7
Author	GuoZhaoyun
Status	Released

# Connectivity

Indexterm: "connectivity"	
GUID	GUID-2DE0CED8-8C54-45E2-BBCA-EB06A8978D22
Title	Connectivity - heading only
Changes	
Version	1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released

## Connecting to wireless networks

You can access the Internet wirelessly from your device using **Wi-Fi®** [udoc\_no\_trans\_wi-fi\_wlan\_plain] technology. This way you can browse the web and share media files over the same **Wi-Fi®** [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] network with other DLNA Certified™ devices, for example, TVs and computers.

If your company or organisation has a virtual private network (VPN), you can connect to this network using your device. You can use a VPN to access intranets and other internal services at your company.

GUID	GUID-DC584BA4-E5B9-4791-AF52-B42F72507E7F
Title	Connecting to wireless networks
Changes	Remove snippet image for Xperia Care
Version	8
Author	LiShuo
Status	Released

## Before using Wi-Fi®

To browse the Internet using a **Wi-Fi®** [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] connection, you need to search for and connect to an available **Wi-Fi®** [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] network and then open the Internet browser. The signal strength of the **Wi-Fi®** [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] network may differ depending on your device's location. Move closer to the **Wi-Fi®** [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] access point to increase the signal strength.

GUID	GUID-8A163681-5881-423C-B364-FBF0EF3186C4
Title	Before using Wi-Fi
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	6
Author	LiShuo
Status	Released





## To turn on Wi-Fi®

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **☰ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
  - 2 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher].
  - 3 Drag the slider beside **Wi-Fi®** [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] to the right to turn on the **Wi-Fi®** [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] function.
- ! It may take a few seconds before **Wi-Fi®** [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] is enabled.

GUID	GUID-32D5A26E-BDE9-443A-9989-CD340E27C309
Title	To turn on Wi-Fi
Changes	Device term Change
Version	10
Author	LiShuo
Status	Released*




## To connect to a Wi-Fi® network

- 1 From the Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL .
  - 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label\_launcher] .
  - 3 Make sure that the Wi-Fi® [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] function is on. Tap Wi-Fi [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan] .
  - 4 Available Wi-Fi® [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] networks are displayed. The available networks may be open or secured. Open networks are indicated by  ID: ICN-SONY-STAT-SYS-WIFI-SIGNAL-4 and secured networks are indicated by  ID: ICN-SONY-STAT-SYS-WIFI-LOCK next to the Wi-Fi® [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] network name.
  - 5 Tap a Wi-Fi® [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] network to connect to it. If you are trying to connect to a secure network, you are asked to enter a password.  ID: ICN-SONY-STAT-SYS-WIFI-SIGNAL-4 is displayed in the status bar once you are connected.
- ! Your device remembers Wi-Fi® [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] networks you connect to. The next time you come within reach of a previously connected Wi-Fi® [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] network, your device automatically connects to it.
  - 💡 In some locations, open Wi-Fi® [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] networks require you to log in to a web page before you can get access to the network. Contact the relevant Wi-Fi® [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] network administrator for more information.



GUID	GUID-349C27FA-BB6C-438D-A975-FBDC889BD41D
Title	To connect to a Wi-Fi network
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	10
Author	LiShuo
Status	Released

## To connect to another Wi-Fi® network

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL .
- 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label\_launcher] > Wi-Fi [wifi] . Detected Wi-Fi® networks are displayed.
- 3 Tap another Wi-Fi® network to connect to it.

GUID	GUID-ACB344A8-EF66-450F-A3D2-77293F9DDC56
Title	To connect to another Wi-Fi network
Changes	updated for ICS
Version	7
Author	JessicaL
Status	Released

## To scan for Wi-Fi® [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] networks manually

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL .
- 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label\_launcher] > Wi-Fi [wifi] .
- 3 Press  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU , then tap Scan [wifi\_menu\_scan] .
- 4 To connect to a Wi-Fi® [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] network, tap the network name.

GUID	GUID-A26E7C05-6ECB-40EC-95AA-1868D0A57BCE
Title	To scan for Wi-Fi networks manually
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	10
Author	LiShuo
Status	Released*

## To add a Wi-Fi® network manually

- 1 Make sure that **Wi-Fi®** [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] is turned on.
  - 2 From the **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **⋮ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
  - 3 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] > **Wi-Fi** [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan].
  - 4 Tap **⋮ID: ICN-SONY-BROWSER-ADD**.
  - 5 Enter the **Network SSID** [wifi\_ssid] for the network.
  - 6 Tap the **Security** [wifi\_security] field to select a security type.
  - 7 If required, enter a password.
  - 8 Tap **Save** [wifi\_save].
- ! **Wi-Fi®** [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] network name is indicated as SSID, ESSID, Access Point, etc. Contact your **Wi-Fi®** [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] network administrator to get the Network SSID name and password.

GUID	GUID-A7AE9A0F-77BC-46FA-8C4A-B90D8C3E4FAC
Title	To add a Wi-Fi network manually
Changes	Add one step according to editor's comments. From odin and onwards.
Version	10
Author	LiShuo
Status	Released*

## Advanced Wi-Fi® settings

GUID	GUID-41AE41FC-BE40-45A1-9859-AC3D9604CA13
Title	Advanced Wi-Fi settings
Changes	Move content to another topic according to editor's comments
Version	4
Author	LiShuo
Status	Released

## Wi-Fi® network status

When you are connected to a **Wi-Fi®** [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] network or when there are **Wi-Fi®** [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] networks available in your vicinity, it is possible to see the status of these **Wi-Fi®** [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] networks. You can also enable your device to notify you whenever an open **Wi-Fi®** [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] network is detected.


GUID	GUID-2A94796D-5D9C-4582-A884-D1E458807BAF
Title	Wi-Fi network status
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	5
Author	LiShuo
Status	Released

## To enable Wi-Fi® network notifications

- 1 Turn on **Wi-Fi®**, if it is not already on.
- 2 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **⋮ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 3 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] > **Wi-Fi** [wifi].
- 4 Press **⋮ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**.
- 5 Tap **Advanced** [pref\_extras\_title].
- 6 Mark the **Network notification** [wifi\_notify\_open\_networks] checkbox.

GUID	GUID-9F08F877-2C94-4551-8F02-965605144EEE
Title	To enable Wi-Fi network notification
Changes	updated for ICS
Version	8
Author	JessicaL
Status	Released

## To view detailed information about a connected Wi-Fi® network

- 1 From the Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL .
- 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label\_launcher] > Wi-Fi [wifi] .
- 3 Tap the Wi-Fi® network that you are currently connected to. Detailed network information is displayed.

GUID	GUID-51F6A64B-C4DB-47B6-91B1-ED742AACB692
Title	To view detailed information about a connected Wi-Fi network
Changes	updated for ICS
Version	7
Author	JessicaL
Status	Released



## Wi-Fi® sleep policy

By adding a Wi-Fi® [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] sleep policy, you can specify when to switch from Wi-Fi® [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] to mobile data.

- ! If you are not connected to a Wi-Fi® [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] network, your device uses a mobile data connection to access the Internet (if you have set up and enabled a mobile data connection on your device).

GUID	GUID-CD643BF1-D575-4F69-A82A-5A1D1773478C
Title	Wi-Fi sleep policy
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	6
Author	LiShuo
Status	Released

## To add a Wi-Fi® sleep policy

- 1 From the Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL .
- 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label\_launcher] > Wi-Fi [wifi] .
- 3 Press  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU .
- 4 Tap Advanced [wifi\_menu\_advanced] .
- 5 Tap Keep Wi-Fi on during sleep [wifi\_setting\_sleep\_policy\_title] .
- 6 Select an option.

GUID	GUID-65A23535-7509-42F8-8825-7DB85FEC5A28
Title	To add a Wi-Fi sleep policy
Changes	updated for ICS
Version	7
Author	JessicaL
Status	Released

## Wi-Fi Direct™

Indexterm: "Wi-Fi®"

Use Wi-Fi Direct™ to connect to other devices directly, without joining a traditional home, office or hotspot network. For example, you can enable your device to be connected directly to a computer so that you can access content from your device on the computer. The devices that you share content with must have Wi-Fi Direct™ certification.

GUID	GUID-6ADC65CD-B4F8-46F5-83B6-1A54F06FD754
Title	Wi-Fi direct
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	2
Author	LiShuo
Status	Released

## To turn on Wi-Fi Direct™

- 1 Make sure your device has the **Wi-Fi®** [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] function turned on.
- 2 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 3 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] > **Wi-Fi** [wifi].
- 4 Tap **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU** > **Wi-Fi Direct** [wifidir\_strings\_settings\_direct\_title\_txt].

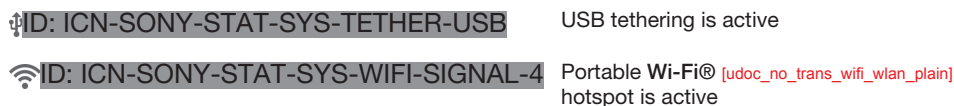
GUID	GUID-61D62CD1-0A49-4146-ABEF-644FAFBE04B7
Title	To turn on Wi-Fi Direct
Changes	From Odin. change the path of Wi-Fi direct according to the new UI.
Version	2
Author	LiShuo
Status	Released

## Sharing your mobile data connection

```
Indexterm: "tethering"
Sub-indexterm: "USB tethering"
Indexterm: "tethering"
Sub-indexterm: "with Xperia Link™"
```

You can share your device's mobile data connection with a single computer using a USB cable. This process is called USB tethering. You can also share your device's data connection with up to eight other devices at once, by turning your device into a portable **Wi-Fi®** [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] hotspot.

When your device is sharing its data connection, the following icons may appear in the status bar or in the Notification panel:



GUID	GUID-391DC4CE-B831-4F3F-8D82-9CC4E03EA622
Title	Sharing the mobile data connection of your phone
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	7
Author	LiShuo
Status	Released

## To share your data connection using a USB cable


- 1 Deactivate all USB cable connections to your device.
- 2 Using the USB cable that came with your device, connect your device to a computer.
- 3 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 4 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label] > **More...** [radio\_controls\_title] > **Tethering & portable hotspot** [tether\_settings\_title\_all].
- 5 Mark the **USB tethering** [usb\_tethering\_button\_text] checkbox.
- 6 To stop sharing your data connection, unmark the **USB tethering** [usb\_tethering\_button\_text] checkbox or disconnect the USB cable.

! You cannot share your device's data connection and SD card over a USB cable at the same time.

💡 You may need to prepare your computer to establish a network connection via USB cable. Go to [www.android.com/tether](http://www.android.com/tether) to get the most current information.


GUID	GUID-60CF569F-5B4A-43C3-B7F8-759B6C76C930
Title	To share data connection of your phone via USB
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	4
Author	LiShuo
Status	Released

## To use your device as a portable Wi-Fi® hotspot

- 1 From the Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL .
- 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label] > More... [radio\_controls\_title] > Tethering & portable hotspot [tether\_settings\_title\_all] .
- 3 Tap Portable Wi-Fi hotspot settings [wifi\_tether\_settings\_text] > Set up Wi-Fi hotspot [wifi\_tether\_configure\_ap\_text] .
- 4 Enter the Network SSID [wifi\_ssid] for the network. Tap the Security [wifi\_security] field to select a security type.
- 5 If required, enter a password.
- 6 Tap Save [wifi\_save] .
- 7 Mark the Portable Wi-Fi hotspot [wifi\_tether\_checkbox\_text] checkbox. Your device starts broadcasting its Wi-Fi network name (SSID). Up to eight computers or other devices can now connect to this network.
- 8 Unmark the Portable Wi-Fi hotspot [wifi\_tether\_checkbox\_text] checkbox when you want to stop sharing your data connection via Wi-Fi®.

GUID	GUID-7B256C79-790C-43DE-9EEB-9BC8B6C70165
Title	To share data connection of your phone as a portable Wi-Fi hotspot
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	5.1.2
Author	LiShuo
Status	Released*

## To rename or secure your portable hotspot

- 1 From the Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL .
- 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label] > More... [radio\_controls\_title] > Tethering & portable hotspot [tether\_settings\_title\_all] .
- 3 Tap Portable Wi-Fi hotspot settings [wifi\_tether\_settings\_text] > Set up Wi-Fi hotspot [wifi\_tether\_configure\_ap\_text] .
- 4 Enter the Network SSID [wifi\_ssid] for the network.
- 5 To select a security type, tap the Security [wifi\_security] field.
- 6 If required, enter a password.
- 7 Tap Save [wifi\_save] .

GUID	GUID-E4366CA7-0AA0-4F7A-B25B-F8BFC3BAF97A
Title	To rename or secure your portable hotspot
Changes	Add one step from Odin.
Version	5
Author	LiShuo
Status	Released


## Virtual private networks (VPNs)

Use your device to connect to virtual private networks (VPNs), which allow you to access resources inside a secured local network from outside the actual network. For example, VPN connections are commonly used by corporations and educational institutions for users who need to access intranets and other internal services when they are outside of the internal network, for example, when they are travelling.

VPN connections can be set up in many ways, depending on the network. Some networks may require you to transfer and install a security certificate in your device. For detailed information on how to set up a connection to your virtual private network, please contact the network administrator of your company or organisation.


GUID	GUID-2F97A59E-A7B7-44AD-8205-166EA14A3A4C
Title	Virtual private networks
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	3
Author	LiShuo
Status	Released

## To add a virtual private network

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label\_launcher] > More... [radio\_controls\_title] > VPN [vpn\_settings\_title].
- 3 Tap Add VPN profile [vpn\_create\_profile].
- 4 Select the type of VPN to add.
- 5 Enter your VPN settings.
- 6 Tap Save [vpn\_save].

GUID	GUID-992DA13F-F73C-44E7-9626-6EF9060F08D2
Title	To add a virtual private network
Changes	Change the Icon to label for Pollux and Nicky ss in step 3 only.
Version	6
Author	Vera Qu
Status	Released

## To connect to a virtual private network

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label\_launcher] > More... [radio\_controls\_title] > VPN [vpn\_settings\_title].
- 3 In the list of available networks, tap the VPN that you want to connect to.
- 4 Enter the required information.
- 5 Tap Connect [vpn\_connect].

GUID	GUID-66363089-CE64-4AB0-A2FA-A0B688FC0289
Title	To connect to a virtual private network
Changes	updated for ICS
Version	4
Author	JessicaL
Status	Released

## To disconnect from a virtual private network

- 1 Drag the status bar downwards.
- 2 Tap the notification for the VPN connection to turn it off.

GUID	GUID-659C005D-AC0A-411F-8CD7-622DF74D0C12
Title	To disconnect from a virtual private network
Changes	From Shakira RTL - first documentation of the feature
Version	1
Author	TobiasN
Status	Released*

## Sharing content with DLNA Certified™ devices

You can view or play media content saved to your device on other devices such as, for example, a TV, or a computer. Such devices must be DLNA Certified™ by the Digital Living Network Alliance and all devices must be connected to the same Wi-Fi® [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] network in order for content to be shared. You can also view or play content from other DLNA Certified™ devices on your device.

After you set up the sharing of content between devices, you can, for example, listen to music files stored on your home computer from your device, or view photos taken with your device's camera on a large-screen TV.

GUID	GUID-A89920CC-EDB6-4CFF-A765-A27DE555911B
Title	Using the Connected devices feature to share files
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	8
Author	LiShuo
Status	Released

## Playing files from DLNA Certified™ devices on your device

When you play files from another DLNA Certified™ device on your device, this other device acts as a server. In other words, it shares content over a network. The server device must have its content sharing function enabled and give access permission to

your device. It also must be connected to the same **Wi-Fi®** [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] network as your device.

GUID	GUID-00FB7F2C-AC5B-40CB-8B7A-4B9F1DAAD699
Title	Playing files from other devices on your phone
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	5
Author	LiShuo
Status	Released

### To play a shared track on your device

- 1 Make sure the devices that you want to share files with are connected to the same **Wi-Fi®** [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] network as your device.
- 2 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**, then find and tap **WALKMAN** [udoc\_no\_trans\_app\_walkman].
- 3 Tap **My music** [music\_tab\_mymusic\_ics] to open the music library.
- 4 Select a device from the list of connected devices.
- 5 Browse the folders of the connected device and select the track that you want to play. The track starts playing automatically.

GUID	GUID-793BA59D-C09E-4393-9935-1993AA924122
Title	To play a shared track on your phone
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	2
Author	LiShuo
Status	Released

### To play a shared video on your device

- 1 Make sure the devices that you want to share files with are connected to the same **Wi-Fi®** [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] network as your device.
- 2 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**, then find and tap **Movies** [udoc\_trans\_app\_name\_movies] > **Devices** [dlna\_strings\_new\_app\_name\_txt].
- 3 Select a device from the list of connected devices.
- 4 Browse the folders of the connected device and select the video that you want to play.

GUID	GUID-86BF0ECD-897F-4839-A3A2-6EA8BA98F236
Title	To play a shared video on your phone
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	2
Author	LiShuo
Status	Released

### To view a shared photo on your device

- 1 Make sure the devices that you want to share files with are connected to the same **Wi-Fi®** [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] network as your device.
- 2 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 3 Find and tap **Album** [album\_app\_name\_txt] > **My albums** [album\_tab\_my\_albums\_txt]. All your available online albums and connected devices are displayed.
- 4 Select a device from the list of connected devices.
- 5 Browse the folders of the connected device and select a photo to view it.

GUID	GUID-FC9F47BE-94A5-4AC3-B206-AB1BA8BA60D9
Title	To view a shared photo on your phone
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	2
Author	LiShuo
Status	Released

## Preparing to play content from your device on DLNA Certified™ devices

Before you can view or play media files from your device on other DLNA Certified™ devices, you must set up file sharing on your device. The devices that you share content with are called client devices. For example, a TV, computer or tablet can act

as client devices. Your device works as a media server when it makes content available to client devices. When you set up file sharing on your device, you must also give access permission to client devices. After you do so, such devices appear as registered devices. Devices that are waiting for access permission are listed as pending devices.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-F12966C1-E49E-47DE-9021-2F453A5A6C1A
<i>Title</i>	Setting up the Media server
<i>Changes</i>	Device term Change
<i>Version</i>	2
<i>Author</i>	LiShuo
<i>Status</i>	Released

### To set up file sharing with other DLNA Certified™ devices

- 1 Connect your device to a **Wi-Fi®** [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] network.
  - 2 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**, then find and tap **ID: ICN-SONY-APP-MUSIC-PLAYER**.
  - 3 Tap **My music** [music\_tab\_mymusic\_ics] to open the music library.
  - 4 Press **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**, then tap **Media server** [dlna\_strings\_home\_option\_menu\_media\_server\_txt].
  - 5 To turn on the **Share content** [mdms\_strings\_main\_dms\_menu\_status\_title\_txt] function, drag the slider. **ID: ICN-SONY-MEDIA-SERVER-STAT** appears in the status bar. Your device can now work as a media server.
  - 6 Connect your computer or other devices to the same **Wi-Fi®** [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] network as your device.
  - 7 A notification appears in the status bar of your device. Open the notification and set the relevant access permissions for other devices.
- ! The instructions described above may differ depending on the client devices used. Refer to your client device User guide for more information. If the device cannot connect, check that your **Wi-Fi®** [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] network is working.

💡 You can also access the **Media server** [dlna\_strings\_home\_option\_menu\_media\_server\_txt] menu under **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] > **More...** [radio\_controls\_title] > **Media server settings** [dlna\_strings\_home\_my\_phone\_list\_media\_server\_row1\_txt]. If you close the **Media server** [dlna\_strings\_home\_option\_menu\_media\_server\_txt] view, file sharing function stays running in the background.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-B95EA6EC-DFEE-4D0C-808A-7EDFCA85B9DA
<i>Title</i>	To set up file sharing using the Connected devices feature
<i>Changes</i>	Update the note according to TID's comments
<i>Version</i>	9
<i>Author</i>	LiShuo
<i>Status</i>	Released

### To stop sharing files with other DLNA Certified™ devices

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**, then find and tap **ID: ICN-SONY-APP-MUSIC-PLAYER**.
- 2 Tap **My music** [music\_tab\_mymusic\_ics] to open the music library.
- 3 Press **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**, then tap **Media server** [dlna\_strings\_home\_option\_menu\_media\_server\_txt].
- 4 Drag the slider to turn off the **Share content** [mdms\_strings\_main\_dms\_menu\_status\_title\_txt] function.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-2C90F93C-C384-458A-8304-A16052A200EA
<i>Title</i>	To turn off the media server
<i>Changes</i>	For Blue 3.0. Add one step since "Media server" menu change its position.
<i>Version</i>	3
<i>Author</i>	LiShuo
<i>Status</i>	Released



## To set access permissions for a pending device

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**, then find and tap **ID: ICN-SONY-APP-MUSIC-PLAYER**.
- 2 Tap **My music** [music\_tab\_mymusic\_ics] to open the music library.
- 3 Press **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**, then tap **Media server** [dlna\_strings\_home\_op-tion\_menu\_media\_server\_txt] .
- 4 Select a device from the **Pending devices** [mdms\_strings\_main\_divider\_pending\_list\_txt] list.
- 5 Select an access permission level.

GUID	GUID-066FC9A7-DBA3-4BBA-A1E5-53443EA60BC4
Title	To set the access level of a pending client device
Changes	For Blue 3.0. Add one step since "Media server" change its position.
Version	3
Author	LiShuo
Status	Released

## To change the name of a registered device

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**, then find and tap **ID: ICN-SONY-APP-MUSIC-PLAYER**.
- 2 Tap **My music** [music\_tab\_mymusic\_ics] to open the music library.
- 3 Press **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**, then tap **Media server** [dlna\_strings\_home\_op-tion\_menu\_media\_server\_txt] .
- 4 Select a device from the **Registered devices** [mdms\_strings\_main\_divider\_registered\_list\_txt] list, then select **Change name** [mdms\_strings\_dialog\_context\_menu\_change\_client\_name\_txt] .
- 5 Enter a new name for the device.

GUID	GUID-DF01091D-D2BB-40F9-93BB-E0C50438DEBA
Title	To change the name of a registered device
Changes	For Blue 3.0
Version	4
Author	LiShuo
Status	Released

## To change the access level of a registered device

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**, then find and tap **ID: ICN-SONY-APP-MUSIC-PLAYER**.
- 2 Tap **My music** [music\_tab\_mymusic\_ics] to open the music library.
- 3 Press **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**, then tap **Media server** [dlna\_strings\_home\_op-tion\_menu\_media\_server\_txt] .
- 4 Select a device from the **Registered devices** [mdms\_strings\_main\_divider\_registered\_list\_txt] list.
- 5 Tap **Change access level** [mdms\_strings\_dialog\_context\_menu\_change\_permission\_txt] and select an option.

GUID	GUID-8007B32F-DA74-47C8-91BB-80BED0C11249
Title	To change the access level of a client device
Changes	For Blue 3.0
Version	4
Author	LiShuo
Status	Released

## To get help about sharing content with other DLNA Certified™ devices

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**, then find and tap **ID: ICN-SONY-APP-MUSIC-PLAYER**.
- 2 Tap **My music** [music\_tab\_mymusic\_ics] to open the music library.
- 3 Press **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**, then tap **Media server** [dlna\_strings\_home\_op-tion\_menu\_media\_server\_txt] .
- 4 Tap **ID: ICN-SONY-MENU-HELP**.

GUID	GUID-A9A9ECB2-D77C-443F-B3BD-E56C08BF3C14
Title	To view help information about Media server
Changes	Update according to editorial review comments

Version	7
Author	LiShuo
Status	Released

## Playing files on a Digital Media Renderer device

Using DLNA™ technology, you can push media content saved on your device to another device connected to the same Wi-Fi® [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] network. The other device must be able to function as a Digital Media Renderer (DMR) device, which means that it can render, or play, content received from your device. A DMR device can be, for example, a TV with DLNA function, or a PC running Windows® 7 or higher.

- ! The settings for enabling the Digital Media Renderer may vary depending on the device used. Refer to the user guide for the respective device for more detailed information.
- ! Content with Digital Rights Management (DRM) cannot be played on a Digital Media Renderer device using DLNA™ technology.

GUID	GUID-0707E2B4-E1A5-4333-AEAE-04ED332BF637
Title	Playing your videos on other devices using DLNA
Changes	added a note for Sony United
Version	5
Author	MikeCao
Status	Released

### To view photos or videos from your device on a DMR device

- 1 Make sure that you have correctly set up the DMR device and that it is connected to the same Wi-Fi® [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] network as your device.
  - 2 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
  - 3 Find and tap **Album** [album\_app\_name\_txt].
  - 4 Browse to and open the file that you want to view.
  - 5 Tap the screen to display the toolbars, then tap **ID: ICN-SONY-ACTIONMENU-PLAYON-CONNECTED** and select a DMR device to share your content with. The selected files start playing in chronological order on the device that you select.
  - 6 To disconnect from the DMR device, tap **ID: ICN-SONY-ACTIONMENU-PLAYON-INSTALLED** and select your device. The file stops playing on the DMR device but continues playing on your device.
- 💡 You can also share a video from the Movies application on your device by tapping the video and then tapping **ID: ICN-SONY-ACTIONMENU-PLAYON-CONNECTED**.

GUID	GUID-3E1387B9-5D26-4A2A-A6BF-B3A245D3848B
Title	To open media files from your phone on another device
Changes	Updaet one label. no text change.
Version	7
Author	LiShuo
Status	Released

### To play a music track from your device on a DMR device

- 1 Make sure that you have correctly set up the DMR device and that it is connected to the same Wi-Fi® [udoc\_no\_trans\_wifi\_wlan\_plain] network as your device.
- 2 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**, then find and tap **WALKMAN** [udoc\_no\_trans\_app\_walkman].
- 3 Tap **My music** [music\_tab\_mymusic\_ics] to open the music library.
- 4 Select a music category and browse to the track that you want to share, then tap the track.
- 5 Tap **ID: ICN-SONY-ACTIONMENU-PLAYON-CONNECTED** and select a DMR device to share your content with. The track plays automatically on the device that you select.
- 6 To disconnect from the DMR device, tap **ID: ICN-SONY-ACTIONMENU-PLAYON-INSTALLED** and select your device. The track stops playing on the DMR device but continues playing on your device.

GUID	GUID-F791072F-54AE-411C-AFE2-33FFECE143DB
------	---

<i>Title</i>	To play a track from your phone on another device
<i>Changes</i>	Update a label. No text change.
<i>Version</i>	10
<i>Author</i>	LiShuo
<i>Status</i>	Released

## NFC

Use Near Field Communications (NFC) to share data with other devices, such as a video, photo, web page address, music file or contact. You can also use NFC to scan tags that give you more information about a product or service as well as tags that activate certain functions on your device.

NFC is a wireless technology with a maximum range of one centimetre, so the devices sharing data must be held close to each other. Before you can use NFC, you must first turn on the NFC function, and the device's screen must be active.

- ! NFC may not be available in all countries and/or regions.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-4DA4B2B5-45C2-4A5D-B1AF-53404CCAAFC1
<i>Title</i>	NFC
<i>Changes</i>	For Huashan: device term change
<i>Version</i>	8
<i>Author</i>	XuCindy
<i>Status</i>	Released

### To turn on the NFC function

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label] > **More...** [radio\_controls\_title].
- 3 Mark the **NFC** [nfc\_quick\_toggle\_title] checkbox.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-FCB71F3A-AA5D-466D-A05D-706B9193962A
<i>Title</i>	To turn on the NFC function
<i>Changes</i>	
<i>Version</i>	1
<i>Author</i>	JessicaL
<i>Status</i>	Released*

### NFC detection area





### ID: ILL-SONY-13NY-NFC

- ! The location of the NFC detection area is not the same on all devices. When sharing data with another device using NFC, refer to the User guide of the other device for more information.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-F1D7581D-5E4B-4A2F-B69D-8BD4BD974852
<i>Title</i>	Detection area
<i>Changes</i>	Device Term Change
<i>Version</i>	2




Author	XuCindy
Status	Released

### To share a contact with another device using NFC

- 1 Make sure that both devices have the NFC function turned on, and that both screens are active.
- 2 To view contacts, go to your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL** , then tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-APP-PHONEBOOK** .
- 3 Tap the contact that you want to share.
- 4 Hold your device and the receiving device back to back so that the NFC detection areas of each device touch each other. When the devices connect, they vibrate and play a short sound. A thumbnail of the contact appears.
- 5 Tap the thumbnail to start the transfer.
- 6 When the transfer is done, the contact information is displayed on the screen of the receiving device and is also saved on the receiving device.


GUID	GUID-A5FC1654-D575-4626-85E3-F27929134E72
Title	To share a contact with another NFC phone
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	4
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released


### To share a music file with another device using NFC

- 1 Make sure that both your device and the receiving device have the NFC function turned on, and that both screens are active.
  - 2 To open the "WALKMAN" application, tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL** , then find and tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-APP-MUSIC-PLAYER** .
  - 3 Tap the **My music** [music\_tab\_my music\_ics] tab to open the music library.
  - 4 Select a music category and browse to the track you want to share.
  - 5 Tap the track to play it. You can then tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-SEMC-MUSIC-PAUSE-NORMAL** to pause the track. The transfer works whether the track is playing or paused.
  - 6 Hold your device and the receiving device back to back so that the NFC detection areas of each device touch each other. When the devices connect, they vibrate and play a short sound. A thumbnail of the track appears.
  - 7 Tap the thumbnail to start the transfer.
  - 8 When the transfer is done, the music file plays immediately on the receiving device. At the same time, the file is saved on the receiving device.
- ! You might not be able to copy, send or transfer copyright-protected items.

GUID	GUID-C3610A96-7DDF-4DD8-BDA2-1FF715EA0A49
Title	To share a music file with another NFC phone
Changes	For Pollux: change from 'walkman player' to 'walkman applications'.
Version	6
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released



## To share a photo or video with another device using NFC

- 1 Make sure that both devices have the NFC function turned on, and that both screens are active.
- 2 To view photos and videos in your device, go to your **Home screen** [home-screen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL, then find and tap **Album** [album\_app\_name\_txt].
- 3 Tap the photo or video that you want to share.
- 4 Hold your device and the receiving device back to back so that the NFC detection areas touch each other. When the devices connect, they vibrate and play a short sound. A thumbnail of the photo or video appears.
- 5 Tap the thumbnail to start the transfer.
- 6 When the transfer is done, the photo or video is displayed on the screen of the receiving device. At the same time, the item is saved on the receiving device.

 You can also use NFC to share a video from the Movies application.

GUID	GUID-497460D2-9A06-40C3-BFA1-4328DF8FE10F
Title	To share a photo or video with another NFC phone
Changes	Term change:'phone' to 'device'; words change.
Version	6
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released

## To share a web address with another device using NFC

- 1 Make sure that both devices have the NFC function turned on, and that both screens are active.
- 2 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 3 To open the web browser, find and tap  ID: ICN-SONY-APP-CHROME.
- 4 Load the web page that you want to share.
- 5 Hold your device and the receiving device back to back so that the NFC detection areas touch each other. When the devices connect, they vibrate and play a short sound. A thumbnail of the web page appears.
- 6 Tap the thumbnail to start the transfer.
- 7 When the transfer is done, the web page is displayed on the screen of the receiving device.

GUID	GUID-07F451E1-A723-427E-98E5-FCDB65790FFC
Title	To share a website address with another phone using NFC
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	3
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released

## Scanning NFC tags

Your device can scan various kinds of NFC tags. For example, it can scan embedded tags on a poster, on a billboard advertisement, or beside a product in a retail store. You can receive additional information, such as a web address.

GUID	GUID-ADBEF157-BCCC-408B-88D4-00FCDDD75F5D
Title	Reading an NFC tag
Changes	For Pollux: delete 'phone number'
Version	3
Author	XuCindy
Status	Released

## To scan an NFC tag

- 1 Make sure that your device has the NFC function turned on and that the screen is active.
- 2 Place your device over the tag so that the NFC detection area touches it. Your device scans the tag and displays the content collected. Tap the content of the tag to open it.
- 3 To open the tag, tap it.

GUID	GUID-2D1E1C30-8574-4E6A-9CA4-07005D115490
Title	To read an NFC tag

<i>Changes</i>	Device Term Change
<i>Version</i>	3
<i>Author</i>	XuCindy
<i>Status</i>	Released

## Paying for items with your device

You can use the Google Wallet™ application or the Operator wallet application on your device to pay for items in stores that support NFC payment methods. Just tap your device on specially enabled electronic payment pads to pay for your purchases. Payments are backed by a credit or debit card, or by prepaid cards or vouchers. Your payment information is stored in the payment application, so you don't need to enter it every time.

- ! To use Operator wallet, your SIM card must have a secure element embedded. Contact your network operator for more details.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-6AB537FB-9ADE-4D7C-8929-F15F345985A2
<i>Title</i>	Paying with your phone
<i>Changes</i>	Device Term change
<i>Version</i>	4
<i>Author</i>	XuCindy
<i>Status</i>	Released

## Google Wallet™

Use the Google Wallet™ application to pay for goods at checkouts. If there is a supported NFC terminal at the checkout, you can just tap your device on the terminal to pay. Google Wallet™ stores details of your credit and debit cards as well as details of coupons and other special offers. Most major credit card types are supported. Security features include a PIN, encrypted storage and the ability to remotely disable a lost wallet.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-F0F227BF-55A5-4CFD-AC86-008E19A5455E
<i>Title</i>	Google Wallet
<i>Changes</i>	Device Term Change
<i>Version</i>	2
<i>Author</i>	XuCindy
<i>Status</i>	Released

## Operator wallet

The Operator wallet application lets you access a variety of services provided by your network operator, such as the option to pay for items in underground trains and stores. Contact your network operator for more information about such services.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-793427E4-4D2A-4F41-87C2-96064B45016B
<i>Title</i>	Operator wallet
<i>Changes</i>	for Tsubasa; created from scratch
<i>Version</i>	1
<i>Author</i>	JessicaL
<i>Status</i>	Released

### To select a wallet for use on your device

- 1 Make sure that the NFC function is on.
- 2 From your Home screen `[homescreen_strings_application_name_txt]`, tap `☰ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL`.
- 3 Find and tap **Settings** `[settings_label]` > **More...** `[radio_controls_title]`.
- 4 Tap **Wallet** `[secure_elements_settings_title]` and select an option.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-3819BC1D-56D2-4B04-A3C1-62671C259BE7
<i>Title</i>	To select a secure element for use in your phone
<i>Changes</i>	Device Term Change
<i>Version</i>	2
<i>Author</i>	XuCindy
<i>Status</i>	Released

## Connecting to an NFC compatible device

You can connect your device to other NFC compatible devices produced by Sony, such as a speaker or a headphone. When establishing this kind of connection, refer to the User guide of the compatible device for more information.

- ! You may need to have Wi-Fi® or Bluetooth™ activated on both devices for the connection to work.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-A923519B-5BA2-4369-9E94-23D64509E0EA
<i>Title</i>	Connecting your phone to an NFC compatible accessory
<i>Changes</i>	Device Term Change
<i>Version</i>	2
<i>Author</i>	XuCindy
<i>Status</i>	Released

## Bluetooth™ wireless technology

Indexterm: "Bluetooth™ wireless technology"

Use the Bluetooth™ function to send files to other Bluetooth™ compatible devices, or to connect to handsfree accessories. Turn on the Bluetooth™ function in your device and create wireless connections to other Bluetooth™ compatible devices such as computers, handsfree accessories, and phones. Bluetooth™ connections work better within 10 metres (33 feet), with no solid objects in between. In some cases you have to manually pair your device with other Bluetooth™ devices.

- ! Interoperability and compatibility among Bluetooth™ devices can vary.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-36689AFD-B450-4570-B637-F31FB56656F0
<i>Title</i>	Bluetooth™ wireless technology
<i>Changes</i>	meters changed to metres
<i>Version</i>	7.1.1.1.1
<i>Author</i>	LuLinda
<i>Status</i>	Released

### To turn on the Bluetooth™ function and make your device visible

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label].
- 3 Tap the on-off switch beside **Bluetooth** [bluetooth\_quick\_toggle\_title] to turn on the Bluetooth™ function.
- 4 Tap **Bluetooth** [bluetooth\_quick\_toggle\_title]. Your device and a list of available Bluetooth™ devices appear.
- 5 Tap your device name to make your device visible to other Bluetooth™ devices.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-A0BC4F09-CC03-43FE-BF57-9D1239FB4499
<i>Title</i>	To turn on the Bluetooth function and make your device visible
<i>Changes</i>	Term change for Odin/Yuga
<i>Version</i>	8
<i>Author</i>	Aiping
<i>Status</i>	Released

### To adjust your device's visibility time to other Bluetooth™ devices

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label] > **Bluetooth** [bluetooth\_quick\_toggle\_title].
- 3 Press **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU** and select **Visibility timeout** [bluetooth\_visibility\_timeout].
- 4 Select an option.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-E14A820F-8572-461D-BC89-2CCB9966818B
<i>Title</i>	To adjust the visibility time before your device becomes invisible to other Bluetooth devices
<i>Changes</i>	Term change for Odin/Yuga
<i>Version</i>	2
<i>Author</i>	Aiping
<i>Status</i>	Released*

## Naming your device

You can give your device a name. This name is shown to other devices after you have turned on the Bluetooth™ function and your device is set to visible.

GUID	GUID-D1C84F4D-7E49-414F-8672-7326B1002658
Title	Device name
Changes	Term change for Odin/Yuga
Version	4
Author	Aiping
Status	Released

### To give your device a name

- 1 Make sure that the Bluetooth™ function is turned on.
- 2 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 3 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label] > **Bluetooth** [bluetooth\_quick\_toggle\_title].
- 4 Press **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU** and select **Rename phone** [bluetooth\_rename\_device<product="default">].
- 5 Enter a name for your device.
- 6 Tap **Rename** [bluetooth\_rename\_button].

GUID	GUID-6063BF5D-7D27-470A-9C86-B630131B6B08
Title	To enter a device name
Changes	Term change for Odin/Yuga
Version	8
Author	Aiping
Status	Released*

## Pairing with another Bluetooth™ device

When you pair your device with another device, you can, for example, connect your device to a Bluetooth™ headset or a Bluetooth™ car kit and use these other devices to make and receive calls.

Once you have paired your device with a Bluetooth™ device, your device will remember this pairing. When pairing your device with a Bluetooth™ device, you may need to enter a passcode. Your device will automatically try the generic passcode 0000. If this does not work, refer to the user guide for your Bluetooth™ device to get the device passcode. You do not need to re-enter the passcode the next time you connect to a paired Bluetooth™ device.

Some Bluetooth™ devices, for example, most Bluetooth™ headsets, require you to both pair and connect with the other device.

You can pair your device with several Bluetooth™ devices, but you can only connect to one Bluetooth™ profile at the same time.

GUID	GUID-C4D7D6FB-1BD3-4C5E-A7FF-5BFE54EDDF0A
Title	Pairing with another Bluetooth device
Changes	Term change for Odin/Yuga
Version	5
Author	Aiping
Status	Released*

### To pair your device with another Bluetooth™ device

- 1 Make sure that the device you want to pair your device with has the Bluetooth™ function activated and is visible to other Bluetooth™ devices.
- 2 From the **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 3 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label] > **Bluetooth** [bluetooth\_quick\_toggle\_title]. All available Bluetooth™ devices appear in a list.
- 4 Tap the Bluetooth™ device that you want to pair with your device.
- 5 Enter a passcode, if required, or confirm the same passcode on both devices. Your device and the Bluetooth™ device are now paired.

GUID	GUID-226704F7-A3B0-4FE9-A592-EB43A40DAA56
Title	To pair your device with another Bluetooth device
Changes	Term change for Odin/Yuga



Version	8
Author	Aiping
Status	Released

### To connect your device to another Bluetooth™ device

- 1 If you are connecting to a Bluetooth device that requires you to first pair your device before connecting, follow the relevant steps to pair your device with that device.
- 2 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 3 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label] > **Bluetooth** [bluetooth\_quick\_toggle\_title].
- 4 Tap the Bluetooth™ device to which you want to connect your device.

GUID	GUID-7EB7AADF-804F-460C-A176-ACA0F5C564B6
Title	To connect your device to another Bluetooth device
Changes	Term change for Odin/Yuga
Version	7
Author	Aiping
Status	Released

### To unpair a Bluetooth™ device

- 1 From the **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label] > **Bluetooth** [bluetooth\_quick\_toggle\_title].
- 3 Under **Paired devices** [bluetooth\_preference\_paired\_devices], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-PAIRED-DEVICE** beside the name of the device that you want to unpair.
- 4 Tap **Unpair** [bluetooth\_device\_context\_unpair].

GUID	GUID-A1AA3B64-C917-412E-9A50-E12A8CAC6795
Title	To unpair a Bluetooth device
Changes	updated for ICS
Version	5
Author	JessicaL
Status	Released

## Sending and receiving items using Bluetooth™ technology

Indexterm: "sending"

Sub-indexterm: "sending items using Bluetooth™"

Indexterm: "receiving items using Bluetooth™"

Share items with other Bluetooth™ compatible devices such as phones or computers. You can send and receive several kinds of items using the Bluetooth™ function, such as:

- Photos and videos
- Music and other audio files
- Contacts
- Web pages

GUID	GUID-FEABAF3-3C43-48A6-99F7-C72423ED3745
Title	Sending and receiving items using Bluetooth™ wireless technology
Changes	added index term "sending"
Version	3
Author	JessicaL
Status	Released*

### To send items using Bluetooth™

- 1 **Receiving device:** Make sure the Bluetooth™ function is turned on and that the device is visible to other Bluetooth™ devices.
- 2 **Sending device:** Open the application which contains the item that you want to send, and scroll to the item.
- 3 Depending on the application and the item you want to send, you may need to, for example, touch and hold the item, open the item or press **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**. Other ways to send an item may exist.
- 4 Select **Share** [menu\_share] or **Send** [gui\_send\_txt] .
- 5 Select **Bluetooth** [bluetooth\_quick\_toggle\_title] .
- 6 Turn on Bluetooth™, if you are asked to do so.
- 7 Tap the name of the receiving device.
- 8 **Receiving device:** If asked, accept the connection.
- 9 **Sending device:** If asked, confirm the transfer to the receiving device.
- 10 **Receiving device:** Accept the incoming item.

GUID	GUID-10429839-41B9-4612-93A5-978EA3721D99
Title	To send items using Bluetooth™
Changes	Updated for Aoba Rita
Version	4.1.1
Author	Aiping
Status	Released*

### To receive items using Bluetooth™

- 1 Make sure that the Bluetooth™ function is on and is visible to other Bluetooth™ devices.
- 2 The sending device now starts sending data to your device.
- 3 If prompted, enter the same passcode on both devices, or confirm the suggested passcode.
- 4 When you are notified of an incoming file to your device, drag the status bar downwards and tap the notification to accept the file transfer.
- 5 Tap **Accept** [incoming\_file\_confirm\_ok] to start the file transfer.
- 6 To view the progress of the transfer, drag the status bar downwards.
- 7 To open a received item, drag the status bar downwards and tap the relevant notification.

GUID	GUID-7360A980-5A09-4B1A-8DB8-313C2CFF6DF4
Title	To receive items using Bluetooth
Changes	Term change for Odin/Yuga
Version	6.1.1
Author	Aiping
Status	Released*

### To view files you have received using Bluetooth™

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label] > **Bluetooth** [bluetooth\_quick\_toggle\_title] .
- 3 Press **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU** and select **Show received files** [bluetooth\_show\_received\_files] .

GUID	GUID-17AB4DD5-71F2-49BE-BDF0-EEE25085F3A8
Title	To find items received using Bluetooth
Changes	updated for ICS
Version	2
Author	JessicaL
Status	Released*

## Connecting your device to a computer

Connect your device to a computer and start transferring pictures, music and other file types. The easiest ways to connect are using a USB cable or Bluetooth wireless technology.

When you connect your device to the computer using a USB cable, you are prompted to install the PC Companion application on your computer. PC Companion

helps you access additional computer applications to transfer and organise media files, update your device, synchronise device content, and more.

- ! You might not be able to transfer some copyright-protected material between your device and a computer.

GUID	GUID-3D56A712-284B-4E62-84E6-B774A4E321F8
Title	Connecting your phone to a computer
Changes	Device term change
Version	7
Author	Hu Pan
Status	Released

## Transferring and handling content using a USB cable

Indexterm: "USB connection"

Use a USB cable connection between a computer and your device for easy transfer and management of your files. Once the two devices are connected, you can drag and drop content between your device and the computer, or between your device's internal storage and SD card, using the computer's file explorer.

If you're transferring music, video, pictures or other media files to your device, it's best to use the Media Go™ application on your computer. Media Go™ converts media files so that you can use them on your device.

GUID	GUID-57E9CFC0-9C19-41CD-BEA6-D940CC06B54E
Title	Transferring and handling content using a USB cable
Changes	Device term change
Version	8
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released*

### To transfer content between your device and computer using a USB cable

- 1 Using a USB cable, connect your device to a computer. **Internal storage & SD card connected** [[usbux\\_ics\\_both\\_emmc\\_and\\_sd\\_connected\\_status\\_bar\\_txt](#)] appears in the status bar on the screen of your device.
- 2 **Computer:** Open Microsoft® Windows® Explorer from the desktop and wait until your device's internal storage and your SD card appear as external disks in Microsoft® Windows® Explorer.
- 3 **Computer:** Drag and drop the desired files between your device and the computer.


GUID	GUID-0E4C094F-CDCA-412C-8E76-45ABDCEEF413
Title	To transfer content between your device and computer using a USB cable
Changes	Device term change
Version	15
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released*

### To transfer content between internal storage and an SD card via USB

- 1 Using a USB cable, connect your device to a computer. **Internal storage & SD card connected** [[usbux\\_ics\\_both\\_emmc\\_and\\_sd\\_connected\\_status\\_bar\\_txt](#)] appears in the status bar on the screen of your device.
- 2 **Computer:** Open Microsoft® Windows® Explorer from the desktop and wait until your device's internal storage and your SD card appear as external disks in Microsoft® Windows® Explorer.
- 3 **Computer:** Drag and drop the desired files between the device's internal storage and the SD card.

GUID	GUID-51531B4B-77BC-442B-87AB-FC49BBB85D6F
Title	To transfer content between internal storage and an SD card via USB
Changes	Device term change
Version	2
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

## To transfer files directly from internal storage to an SD card in the device

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] > **Storage** [storage\_settings] > **Transfer data to SD card** [transfer\_data\_desc\_txt].
- 3 Mark the file types you want to transfer to the SD card.
- 4 Tap **Transfer** [button\_transfer\_txt].

- 💡 The direct transfer method means that a USB cable connection to a computer is not necessary.

GUID	GUID-5619F3BA-2821-4D9D-B998-190802F29514
Title	To transfer files from the internal storage to SD card
Changes	
Version	1
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

## Transferring files using Media transfer mode via Wi-Fi®

You can transfer files between your device and other MTP compatible devices, such as a computer, using a Wi-Fi® connection. Before connecting, you first need to pair the two devices. If you're transferring music, video, pictures or other media files between your device and a computer, it's best to use the Media Go™ application on the computer. Media Go™ converts media files so that you can use them on your device.

- 💡 In order to use this feature, you need a Wi-Fi® enabled device that supports Media transfer, for example, a computer running Microsoft® Windows Vista® or Windows® 7.

GUID	GUID-4F7E8833-019A-4D0A-8556-9433F6C04D19
Title	Transferring and handling content using Media transfer mode over Wi-Fi
Changes	Device term change
Version	3
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released


## To pair your device wirelessly with a computer using Media transfer mode

- 1 Make sure Media transfer mode is enabled on your device. It is normally enabled by default.
- 2 Connect your device to the computer using a USB cable.
- 3 **Computer:** Once the name of your device appears on the screen, click *Network configuration* and follow the instructions to pair the computer.
- 4 When you are finished pairing, disconnect the USB cable from both devices.

- ! The above instructions only work if Windows® 7 is installed on your computer and the computer is connected to a Wi-Fi® Access Point via a network cable.


GUID	GUID-D08D64DB-D0EC-4B8B-8502-25924770E375
Title	To pair your device with a computer for using Media transfer mode over Wi-Fi
Changes	Device term change
Version	3
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### To connect paired devices wirelessly in Media transfer mode

- 1 Make sure Media transfer mode is enabled on your device. It is normally enabled by default.
  - 2 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
  - 3 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label\_launcher] > Xperia™ [sonyericsson\_settings\_title] > USB Connectivity [usbux\_strings\_usb\_connectivity\_txt] .
  - 4 Tap the paired device that you want to connect to under Trusted devices [usbux\_strings\_trusted\_hosts\_title\_txt] .
  - 5 Tap Connect [usbux\_strings\_connect\_txt] .
- ! Make sure the Wi-Fi® function is turned on.


GUID	GUID-CD8EA3D6-AA60-42E9-A72E-06ACE3160E0B
Title	To connect paired devices wirelessly in Media transfer mode
Changes	Valid from Odin and Yuga (only a label changed no text updated)
Version	4
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### To disconnect a wirelessly paired device in Media transfer mode

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label\_launcher] > Xperia™ [sonyericsson\_settings\_title] > USB Connectivity [usbux\_strings\_usb\_connectivity\_txt] .
- 3 Tap the paired device that you want to disconnect from under Trusted devices [usbux\_strings\_trusted\_hosts\_title\_txt] .
- 4 Tap Disconnect [usbux\_strings\_disconnect\_txt] .

GUID	GUID-E3943642-BCA2-4EE0-ACB6-11714C1A3BBD
Title	To disconnect from connected device
Changes	Valid from Odin and Yuga (only a label changed no text updated)
Version	3
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### To remove a pairing with another device

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label\_launcher] > Xperia™ [sonyericsson\_settings\_title] > USB Connectivity [usbux\_strings\_usb\_connectivity\_txt] .
- 3 Tap the paired device that you want to remove.
- 4 Tap Forget [usbux\_strings\_trusted\_hosts\_button\_forget\_txt] .

GUID	GUID-257C445A-E565-4C26-932D-EE78996A0B2E
Title	To remove from the paired host
Changes	Valid from Odin and Yuga (Only label changed no text updated)
Version	3
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

## PC Companion

PC Companion is a computer application that gives you access to additional features and services which help you transfer music, video and pictures to and from your device. You can also use PC Companion to update your device and get the latest software version available. The installation files for PC Companion are saved on your device and the installation is launched from the device when you connect it to a computer via USB cable.

You need an internet connected computer running one of the following operating systems to use the PC Companion application:

- Microsoft® Windows® 7
- Microsoft® Windows Vista®

- Microsoft® Windows® XP (Service Pack 3 or higher)

GUID	GUID-DBC49833-F11A-4854-B947-B9513E8A31DF
Title	PC Companion
Changes	Device term change
Version	7
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### To install PC Companion on a computer

- 1 Connect your device to a computer using a USB cable.
- 2 **Device:** Tap **Install** [usbux\_strings\_install\_txt] in the PC Companion installation window.
- 3 **Computer:** PC Companion automatically starts after a few seconds. Follow the on-screen instructions to install PC Companion.

- 💡 The PC companion installer is enabled by default on your device. You can disable this option in your device settings.

GUID	GUID-E39641B8-6636-488E-B6BF-75B389585C30
Title	To install PC Companion
Changes	Device term change
Version	5
Author	PengLeon
Status	Draft

### To start PC Companion

- 1 Make sure that PC Companion is installed on your PC.
- 2 Open the PC Companion application on the PC, then click **Start** to open one of the features that you want to use.

GUID	GUID-AF8F73C0-0423-4C7B-B4BD-0DC0507C9694
Title	To use PC Companion
Changes	Changed for ICS Update
Version	10
Author	peng kiki
Status	Released

## Media Go™

Indexterm: "Media Go™"

The Media Go™ computer application helps you transfer and manage media content in your device and computer. You can install and access Media Go™ from within the PC Companion application.

You need one of these operating systems to use the Media Go™ application:

- Microsoft® Windows® 7
- Microsoft® Windows Vista®
- Microsoft® Windows® XP, Service Pack 3 or higher

GUID	GUID-107B9C4F-BD96-4635-B7F5-EA775969ED11
Title	Media Go™
Changes	Term Chang
Version	8
Author	LeonP
Status	Released

### To transfer content using the Media Go™ application

- 1 Connect your device to a computer using a supported USB cable.
- 2 **Device:** In the status bar, **Internal storage connected** [usbux\_strings\_internal\_storage\_connected\_homestatus\_txt] appears.
- 3 **Computer:** Open the PC Companion application on the PC first. In PC Companion, click *Media Go* to start the Media Go™ application. In some cases, you may have to wait for Media Go™ to install.
- 4 Using Media Go™, drag and drop files between your computer and device.

GUID	GUID-D0BCECF1-74E8-41F9-96B0-ECA7157D85A0
Title	To transfer content using Media Go™
Changes	Term change
Version	8.1.1.1.1
Author	LeonP
Status	Released

## Sony™ Bridge for Mac

The Sony™ Bridge for Mac application helps you transfer music, video, pictures or media files between your device and your Apple® Mac® computer. You can also use the Sony™ Bridge for Mac application to manage files through a file browser, update your device software, and backup and restore content in your device.

You need an internet connected Apple® Mac® computer running the following operating system to use the Sony™ Bridge for Mac application:

- MacOS version 10.6 or later

GUID	GUID-AB1F5339-A66A-49AF-91ED-010F343F5BC9
Title	Bridge for Mac
Changes	
Version	1
Author	PengLeon
Status	Draft

### To install Sony™ Bridge for Mac

- 1 Using your Apple Mac computer, go to [www.sonymobile.com/support](http://www.sonymobile.com/support), then search for and download the Sony™ Bridge for Mac application to a folder on the computer.
- 2 After the download is complete, open the folder and double-click the *Sony Bridge for Mac.dmg* file to start the installation.
- 3 Follow the instructions on your Apple® Mac® computer to complete the installation.

GUID	GUID-BB746E83-D693-4FF7-A787-D057F6D9AD4C
Title	To install Bridge for Mac on your Apple Mac computer
Changes	Valid from Togari updated according to editor's comments
Version	2
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### To start Sony™ Bridge for Mac

- 1 Make sure that the Sony™ Bridge for Mac application is installed on your Apple® Mac® computer.
- 2 **Computer:** Double-click the Sony™ Bridge for Mac application icon in Applications folder.

GUID	GUID-9FBF5F8D-4E87-423E-B579-7D1D15B10212
Title	To start Sony Bridge for Mac
Changes	
Version	1
Author	PengLeon
Status	Draft

### To transfer content using Sony™ Bridge for Mac

- 1 Using a USB cable, connect your device to an Apple® Mac® computer.
- 2 **Computer:** Open the Sony™ Bridge for Mac application. After a few moments, The Sony™ Bridge for Mac application detects your device.
- 3 **Computer:** Drag and drop the desired files between your device and Apple® Mac® computer.

GUID	GUID-CB978466-6473-4929-B726-2941B5F52725
Title	To transfer media content between your device and an Apple® Mac® computer
Changes	
Version	1
Author	PengLeon
Status	Draft

## Scanning barcodes with the NeoReader™ application

Indexterm: "scanning barcodes"	
GUID	GUID-73B2ACA2-4CF0-43CC-860A-DF24AE7854EA
Title	Scanning barcodes with the NeoReader™ application - heading only
Changes	



Version	1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released

## About scanning with the NeoReader™ application

Use your device as a barcode scanner to find out more about items you scan. For example, you see a coat in a magazine ad and want to find the nearest retail outlet to buy it. If the ad contains a readable barcode, the NeoReader™ application uses this code to access mobile web content, such as a web page with more product information or a map of nearby outlets. NeoReader™ supports most standard barcode types.

GUID	GUID-71CB1582-5806-4159-8420-F8470C3F0645
Title	About scanning with the NeoReader™ application
Changes	device term change
Version	2
Author	QianWang
Status	Released

### To start the NeoReader™ application

- 1 From the Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap  ID: ICN-SONY-NEOREADER NeoReader™ [IA\_APP\_NeoReader] .


GUID	GUID-E880B67F-34D1-4D0E-A239-83DE212029BA
Title	To start the NeoReader™ application
Changes	Valid for Robyn & Mimmi
Version	1
Author	AnnE
Status	Released

### To scan a barcode

- 1 When the NeoReader™ application is open, hold your device over the barcode until the complete barcode is visible in the viewfinder.
  - 2 Your device automatically scans the barcode, and vibrates when the barcode is recognised.
- ! Some bar codes might be too small to scan.

GUID	GUID-DA4F156D-4FD8-468B-ABCE-E82B147832B2
Title	To scan a bar code
Changes	device term change. Add a condition for tablet.
Version	4
Author	QianWang
Status	Released

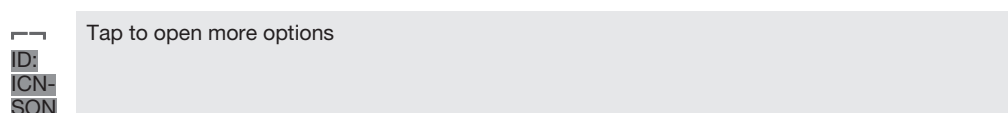
### To enter a barcode manually

- 1 When the NeoReader™ application is open, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-NEOREADER-MENU-OPEN.
- 2 Enter the numbers of the barcode in the text field, then tap GO! [udoc\_no\_trans\_neoreader\_go] .

GUID	GUID-111F2AD2-F333-4A3B-B3A3-80601DE7BBA3
Title	To enter bar code numbers manually
Changes	Updated from Aoba Rita and valid for all ongoing projects Icon updated and updated step2 a little bit
Version	3
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

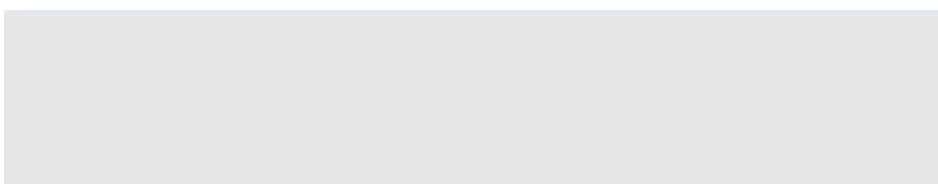
## NeoReader™ application menu overview

The following menu options are available in the NeoReader™ application:





Y-  
NEO  
READ  
ER-  
MEN  
U-  
OPEN

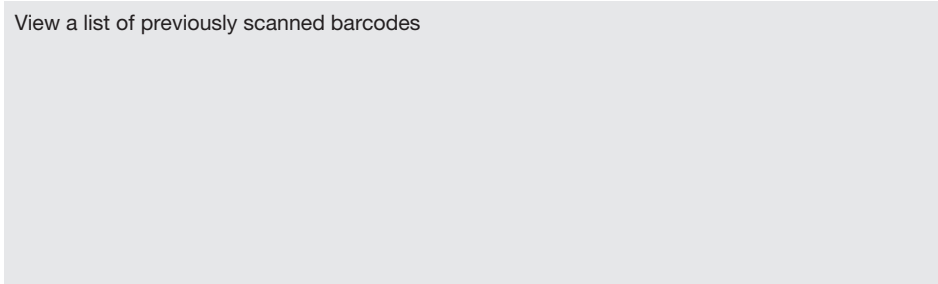


ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
NEO  
READ  
ER-  
MEN  
U-  
NUM  
BERS

Enter the barcode numbers manually. This option can be used if your camera has difficulty reading the barcode

ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
NEO  
READ  
ER-  
MEN  
U-  
HIST  
ORY

View a list of previously scanned barcodes

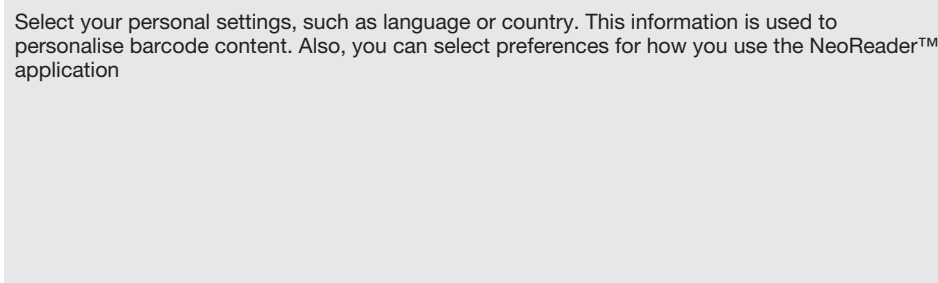


ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
NEO  
READ  
ER-  
MEN  
U-  
HELP

View information about the NeoReader™ application. Read more about different barcode types, and about how to use NeoReader™

ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
NEO  
READ  
ER-  
MEN  
U-  
PERS  
ONAL

Select your personal settings, such as language or country. This information is used to personalise barcode content. Also, you can select preferences for how you use the NeoReader™ application



ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
NEO  
READ  
ER-  
MEN  
U-  
INVIT  
E

Send a text message to invite a friend to download the NeoReader™ application

GUID	GUID-36EA646E-F5D0-4F8E-8F49-4ECC96F48F48
Title	NeoReader(TM) application menu overview
Changes	Updated from Nanhu and valid for all ongoing projects Removed one icon and description only due to SW change No other text change No need review
Version	4
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

## Smart Connect

Indexterm: "Smart Connect"	
GUID	GUID-68FE7B74-814F-4E9E-8C87-1B9327458760
Title	Smart Connect - Heading only
Changes	fix a typo
Version	2
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released

### About Smart Connect

Indexterm: "Smart Connect"	
----------------------------	--


Use the Smart Connect application to set what happens in your device when you connect or disconnect an accessory. You can also use it to set a specific action or a group of actions to launch on your device at certain times of the day.

For example, when you connect your headset or headphones, you can set an event so that the following actions are launched on your device:

- Between 7am and 9am, when you commute to work, the "WALKMAN" application starts, and the web browser opens the morning paper.
- On the way back from work, the FM radio starts, and a notes app with your shopping list opens.


GUID	GUID-A6EEBEB7-3017-4A9F-B814-589329C68676
Title	About Smart Connect
Changes	for Pollux; change "WALKMAN player" to "WALKMAN application"
Version	2.1.1
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released


### To start the Smart Connect application

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap Smart Connect [app\_name\_smart\_connect].

GUID	GUID-C873A6A9-8D7B-46E0-A142-5F750C07A596
Title	To start the Smart Connect application
Changes	Created for Smart Connect v5.0.5
Version	1
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released




### To create a Smart Connect event

- 1 Start the Smart Connection application. If you are opening Smart Connect for the first time, tap OK [ok] to close the introduction screen.
- 2 On the Events [event\_tab] tab, tap + ID: ICN-SONYNEW-WINDOW-HOLO-DARK.
- 3 Give the event a name, then tap Create [dlg\_add\_event\_button\_create].
- 4 Under When [edit\_event\_triggers], add either an accessory or a time interval, or both.
- 5 Under Do this [edit\_event\_start\_actions], add what you want to happen in your device.
- 6 Under At the end [edit\_event\_stop\_actions], add what you want to happen when you disconnect the accessory or when the time interval comes to an end. If both these conditions are set, the actions start either when you disconnect the accessory, or when the time interval comes to an end.
- 7 To save the event, press  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-AND-BACK.

 To add a Bluetooth™ accessory, you have to first pair it with your device.

GUID	GUID-6FAC4C54-43FB-49B7-9629-446C10B5F912
Title	To create a Smart Connect event
Changes	Created for Smart Connect v5.0.5
Version	1
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released

### To edit a Smart Connect event

- 1 Start the Smart Connection application.
  - 2 On the **Events** [event\_tab] tab, tap an event.
  - 3 If the event is switched off, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-LAGAN-SWITCH-OFF.
  - 4 Adjust the settings as desired.
  - 5 To save the event, press  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-AND-BACK.
-  To delete an incorrect entry, touch and hold the entry and then tap **Delete** [delete].

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-DD5DB4FE-7107-4CBC-8C57-28384CA3EEA7
<i>Title</i>	To edit a Smart Connect event
<i>Changes</i>	Created for Smart Connect v5.0.5
<i>Version</i>	1
<i>Author</i>	Gan Lu
<i>Status</i>	Released

# Synchronising data on your phone

Indexterm: "synchronising"	
GUID	GUID-28DAA87E-EB23-4FCF-80EC-BB843C864B1E
Title	Synchronising data on your device - heading only
Changes	
Version	1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released*

## About synchronising data on your device

You can sync contacts, email, calendar events, and other information with your device from multiple email accounts, synchronisation services and other kinds of accounts, depending on the applications installed on your device. Synchronising your device with other information sources is an easy and practical way to stay up to date.

GUID	GUID-D8D6C8EA-2D89-497B-B322-0A49D2D1AFCB
Title	About synchronising data on your phone
Changes	for Dogo; remove the list of information
Version	3
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released


## Synchronising with Google™

Indexterm: "Google™ synchronisation"  
 Indexterm: "synchronising"  
 Sub-indexterm: "Google™ contacts, calendar, email"

Synchronise your phone with different Google™ services to keep your information up to date, regardless of which phone you're using your Google™ account from. For example, you can synchronise your contacts, Gmail™ and calendar data.



GUID	GUID-8FD641F7-C099-408F-9D1E-A01712736415
Title	Google Sync synchronisation service
Changes	for Nanhu SS; remove Google Browser
Version	12
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released

### To set up a Google™ account for synchronisation

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Tap Settings [settings\_label] > Add account [add\_account\_label] > Google [SYNC-ACCOUNTS-GOOGLE-TM].
- 3 Follow the registration wizard to create a Google™ account, or sign in if you already have an account.
- 4 Tap your newly created Google™ account, then tap the items that you want to synchronise.

GUID	GUID-7E6DA8CF-6E32-42A9-8626-EF851EE27181
Title	To set up a Google account for synchronisation
Changes	for Pollux; remove step 4
Version	12
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released



### To synchronise manually with your Google™ account

- 1 From the Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Tap Settings [settings\_label] > Google [SYNC-ACCOUNTS-GOOGLE-TM].
- 3 Tap the Google™ account that you want to synchronise.
- 4 Press  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU, then tap Sync now [sync\_menu\_sync\_now].

GUID	GUID-1B403B1F-500B-41F5-8077-9E8F4B4C8257
Title	To synchronise manually with your Google account

Changes	for JB Platform; change a label in step 2
Version	5
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released

### To remove a Google™ account

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Tap Settings [settings\_label] > Google [SYNC-ACCOUNTS-GOOGLE-TM].
- 3 Tap the Google™ account that you want to remove from the accounts list.
- 4 Press  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU, then tap Remove account [remove\_account\_label].
- 5 Tap Remove account [remove\_account\_label] again to confirm.

GUID	GUID-B4F75C86-230E-481B-9A12-7ADF12525940
Title	To remove a Google account
Changes	for JB platform; change a label in step 2
Version	9
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released

## Synchronising your corporate email, calendar and contacts


Indexterm: "Microsoft® Exchange synchronisation"  
 Indexterm: "corporate email, calendar and contacts"  
 Indexterm: "synchronising"  
 Sub-indexterm: "with Microsoft® Exchange"

Access your corporate email messages, calendar appointments and contacts directly from your device. View and manage them just as easily as you would from a computer. After setup, you can find your information in the Email [em\_app\_name], Calendar [cal\_app\_label] and Contacts [contactsList] applications.

- ! For you to access the functionality described above, your corporate information must be stored on a Microsoft® Exchange server.

GUID	GUID-16B85AE6-57DF-421F-9596-611EA3A85879
Title	Corporate email etc
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	4
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released

### To set up corporate email, calendar and contacts

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Tap Settings [settings\_label] > Add account [add\_account\_label] > Exchange ActiveSync [exchange\_name].
- 3 Enter your corporate email address and password.
- 4 Tap Next [next\_action]. Your device begins to retrieve your account information. If a failure occurs, contact your corporate network administrator for more information.
- 5 Tap OK [ph\_ok] to allow your corporate server to control your device.
- 6 Select what data you want to sync with your device, such as contacts and calendar entries.
- 7 If desired, activate the device administrator to allow your corporate server to control certain security features on your device. For example, you can allow your corporate server to set password rules and set storage encryption.
- 8 When the setup is done, enter a name for the corporate account.

GUID	GUID-3962965F-AF05-424F-A59F-BB1E3EA26F10
Title	To set up corporate email etc
Changes	for JB platform; remove step 3&4; change step 2
Version	7
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released*

## To edit the setup of corporate email, calendar and contacts

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Tap **Email** [em\_app\_name], then tap **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**.
- 3 Tap **Settings** [settings\_label\_launcher] and select a corporate account.
- 4 Change the desired settings.

GUID	GUID-F2995E0C-54E9-43FA-A02B-4DED8389F312
Title	To edit your Exchange ActiveSync account
Changes	for Odin & Yuga; change steps 2 & 3
Version	4
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released

## To set a synchronisation interval for a corporate account

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Tap **Settings** [settings\_label] > **Accounts & sync** [sync\_settings] and select your corporate account.
- 3 Tap **Account settings** [account\_settings\_action], then tap the corporate account for which you want to set a synchronisation level.
- 4 Tap **Inbox check frequency** [account\_settings\_mail\_check\_frequency\_label] and select an interval option.

GUID	GUID-2A828419-E14E-4123-A8A3-128F519783E6
Title	To set a synchronisation interval - EAS
Changes	For ICS Update - change the description at step 3
Version	3
Author	Tan Nellie
Status	Released*

## To remove a corporate account

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Tap **Settings** [settings\_label] > **Exchange ActiveSync** [exchange\_name], then select the corporate account.
- 3 Tap **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**, then tap **Remove account** [remove\_account\_label].
- 4 Tap **Remove account** [remove\_account\_label] again to confirm.

GUID	GUID-1F78C904-3F56-4A92-B018-B964B5E9930B
Title	To remove a corporate account
Changes	for Odin & Yuga; add a label in step 2
Version	4
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released

## Synchronising with Facebook™

Indexterm: "Facebook™"  
 Sub-indexterm: "synchronisation"  
 Indexterm: "Facebook™"  
 Sub-indexterm: "Xperia™ with Facebook"  
 Indexterm: "synchronising"  
 Sub-indexterm: "Facebook™ contacts, calendar, photos"

There are two ways to use Facebook™ on your device. You can use the standard Facebook application to access your online Facebook account, or you can synchronise your Facebook account with your device and share content between Facebook™ and a range of other applications. For example, you can share music in the "WALKMAN" application on your device via Facebook. To synchronise your device with Facebook, you must first set up an "Xperia™ with Facebook" account — a solution developed by Sony to enable easy integration.

GUID	GUID-DFC5FFBA-4663-4D32-B4F1-BD49FBE4399F
Title	Sync with Facebook inside Xperia
Changes	for Odin; change Timescape to WALKMAN; change "Facebook integration to "Xperia with Facebook"; Device Term Change
Version	6
Author	Gan Lu

Status	Released
--------	----------

### To set up an "Xperia™ with Facebook" account on your device

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Tap Settings [settings\_label] > Add account [add\_account\_label] > Xperia™ with Facebook [auth\_label] .
- 3 Follow the on-screen instructions to sign in to your Facebook™ account, or create a new account.

GUID	GUID-FEBC2F19-4E4A-4D41-BB94-2502341DB1C7
Title	To set up a Facebook inside Xperia account on your device
Changes	for Odin; change "Facebook integration" to "Xperia with Facebook"; Device Term Change
Version	5
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released*

### To synchronise manually with an "Xperia™ with Facebook" account

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Tap Settings [settings\_label] > Xperia™ with Facebook [auth\_label] .
- 3 Select the account that you want to synchronise.
- 4 Press **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**, then tap Sync now [sync\_menu\_sync\_now] .

GUID	GUID-6D6FECAA-F74F-467B-91EC-B51C15FF88DE
Title	To sync manually with Xperia™ with Facebook
Changes	for Odin; change "facebook integration" to "Xperia with Facebook"
Version	5
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released

### To remove a Facebook™ integration account

- ! When you remove a Facebook™ integration account from your phone, the associated online Facebook account is not deleted and you can still access it from a computer.
- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
  - 2 Tap Settings [settings\_label] > Xperia™ with Facebook [auth\_label] .
  - 3 Select the account that you want to remove.
  - 4 Press **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**, then tap Remove account [remove\_account\_label] .
  - 5 Tap Remove account [remove\_account\_label] again to confirm.

GUID	GUID-113D4663-C554-4489-951B-ACCBAC8D07B7
Title	To remove a Facebook inside Xperia account
Changes	for Nanhu SS; change a label in step 2
Version	5
Author	Gan Lu
Status	Released

# Maps and locations

Indexterm: "GPS"	
Indexterm: "wireless networks"	
Indexterm: "locations"	
Indexterm: "maps"	
GUID	GUID-B1602361-6E6A-4C3D-AD90-59DA2221197B
Title	Maps and locations - heading only
Changes	
Version	1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released*

## About location services

Indexterm: "GPS"	
Indexterm: "wireless networks"	
Indexterm: "location"	

Use your device to find out where you are. There are two methods: GPS and wireless networks. Enable the wireless networks option if you only need your approximate location, and want it fast. If you want a more exact position, and have a clear view of the sky, enable the GPS option. In situations where the wireless network connection is weak, you should enable both options to ensure that your location is found.

- ! Sony does not warrant the accuracy of any location services including but not limited to navigational services.

GUID	GUID-C916866A-B045-42A5-B58F-E26F4129F7DF
Title	About location services
Changes	device term change
Version	2
Author	QianWang
Status	Released


## Using GPS

Your device has a global positioning system (GPS) receiver that uses satellite signals to calculate your location.

- ! When you use features that require the GPS receiver to find your location, make sure you have a clear view of the sky.

GUID	GUID-D115BE02-E89E-4E2A-838A-984E33539A9F
Title	Using GPS
Changes	device term change
Version	6
Author	QianWang
Status	Released

### To enable GPS

- 1 From your Home screen, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Tap **Settings** [la\_menu\_settings] > **Location services** [location\_settings\_title] .
- 3 Mark the **GPS satellites** [location\_gps] checkbox.

GUID	GUID-B38FAFAB-9F56-4C79-8392-AB4E9EE30936
Title	To enable GPS
Changes	Update labels for ICS products
Version	6
Author	WangT
Status	Released*

## Getting the best performance

The first time you use the GPS it can take 5 to 10 minutes for your location to be found. To help the search, make sure you have a clear view of the sky. Stand still and don't cover the GPS antenna (the highlighted area in the image). The GPS signals can pass through clouds and plastic, but not through most solid objects such as



buildings and mountains. If your location isn't found after a few minutes, move to another location.

**ID:**

GUID	GUID-395C3448-B84F-4DFD-A2D3-EA5CF6A14E60
Title	Getting the best performance
Changes	Valid for eDream3.0 and Gingerbread.
Version	1
Author	WangT
Status	Released

## Google Maps™

Indexterm: "Google Maps™"


Indexterm: "Maps"

Track your current location, view real-time traffic situations and receive detailed directions to your destination. Before taking trips, you can download and save maps to your memory card to avoid high roaming costs.

- ! The Google Maps™ application requires the use of an Internet connection. You may incur data connection charges when you connect to the Internet from your device. Contact your network operator for more information. The Google Maps™ application may not be available in every market, country or region.

GUID	GUID-3D2F9342-00BF-45BC-94EE-B8D95FCCE84F
Title	Google Maps
Changes	index term updated
Version	10
Author	QianWang
Status	Released

### To use Google Maps™

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
  - 2 Find and tap Maps [google-maps-maps].
- ! If you want to use Google Maps™, you have to enable one of the location methods available under Settings [la\_menu\_settings] > Location services [location\_settings\_title].

GUID	GUID-42F5EBF3-FE39-4000-B2F3-D48122F0B26F
Title	To use Maps
Changes	For eDream 4.1 - ICS update
Version	7
Author	WangT
Status	Released*

### To learn more about Google Maps™

- When you use Google Maps™, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU, then tap Help [google\_maps\_help].

GUID	GUID-323FA75F-5130-4EC6-8FE4-9A05D8119BD9
Title	To learn more about Maps
Changes	From Odin/Yuga. Updated icon and change press to tap.
Version	3
Author	QianWang
Status	Released

## Viewing your friends' locations with Google Latitude™

Indexterm: "Latitude"

Indexterm: "Google Latitude™"

Join Google Latitude™ to view your friends' locations on maps and share your location and other information with them.

GUID	GUID-8F5922E5-665A-4A37-AE1C-815FAE8557BA
Title	Viewing your friends' locations with Google Latitude
Changes	4.0 legal review comments implemented

Version	2
Author	WangT
Status	Released

## Using Google Maps™ to get directions

Indexterm: "Navigation application"  
Indexterm: "driving directions"

Use the Google Maps™ application to get directions when you travel by foot, public transportation, or car. You can add a shortcut to a destination on your Home screen to get quick directions from wherever you are.

When you view a map, you make an Internet connection, and data is transferred to your device. So it's a good idea to download and save maps to your device before you take a trip. This way, you can avoid high roaming costs.

- ! Sony does not warrant the accuracy of any directional services.

GUID	GUID-481D23C6-DA60-43D8-8BE5-143CEEF414A9
Title	Getting driving directions
Changes	device term change
Version	9
Author	QianWang
Status	Released*

## Using the Navigation application

Use the Navigation application in your device to get turn-by-turn instructions on how to get places. The directions are both spoken and displayed on the screen.

- ! The Navigation application may not be available in every market.

GUID	GUID-5CEA149E-FFED-4D6D-B53B-B656B1BC5C75
Title	Using the Navigation application
Changes	device term change
Version	4
Author	QianWang
Status	Released

### To start Navigation

- 1 From your Home screen, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap **Navigation** [[navigation\\_app\\_name](#)].

GUID	GUID-7E50DF30-726E-4555-A88F-CA6EBE00EFF9
Title	To start Navigation
Changes	Valid for eDream3.0 and Gingerbread.
Version	1
Author	WangT
Status	Released

# Calendar and alarm clock

GUID	GUID-ECBFED5C-3FD9-4178-8410-BDF05AFE0032
Title	Calendar and alarm clock - heading only
Changes	
Version	1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released

## Calendar

Indexterm: "calendar"	
Indexterm: "time management"	
Indexterm: "events"	
Sub-indexterm: "calendar"	
GUID	GUID-CBBA1327-6D73-439D-87B0-2E2C4112207B
Title	Calendar - heading only
Changes	
Version	1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released

## About the calendar

Your device has a calendar for managing your time schedule. If you have a Google™ account, you can also synchronise your device calendar with your web calendar. See *Synchronising your corporate email, calendar and contacts* on page 197.

GUID	GUID-AC492FE1-C780-4683-B1A7-1A156D38C51E
Title	About the calendar
Changes	Updated from Togari and valid for all project onwards Device term change only No other text change NO NEED REVIEW
Version	2
Author	WangHerman
Status	Draft

## To set the calendar view

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **☰ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**, then find and tap **Calendar** [cal\_app\_label].
- 2 Tap **Month** [month\_view], **Week** [week\_view] or **Day** [day\_view] to select an option.

GUID	GUID-B4247FA7-E926-4F30-9A63-594965D23245
Title	To set the calendar view
Changes	Valid for eDream 6.0 Nozomi Aoba
Version	5
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

## To view multiple calendars

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **☰ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**, then find and tap **Calendar** [cal\_app\_label].
- 2 Press **☰ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**, then tap **My calendars** [menu\_select\_calendars].
- 3 Select the calendars you want to view.

GUID	GUID-38ECA636-32DF-42B1-89D7-FCC59C1E6703
Title	To view multiple calendars
Changes	Valid for eDream 4.0.1 Urushi. Label updated only.
Version	7
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released*

## To create a calendar event

Indexterm: "calendar"	
-----------------------	--

Sub-indexterm: "create an event"

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**, then tap **Calendar** [cal\_app\_label].
- 2 Tap **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**, then tap **New event** [event\_create].
- 3 Enter the name, time, location and description for the event.
- 4 Select a reminder for the event. To add a new reminder for the event, tap **+ID: ICN-SONYNEW-WINDOW-HOLO-DARK**.
- 5 Tap **Done** [done\_action].

💡 When the appointment time approaches, your phone plays a short sound to remind you. Also, **ID: ICN-SONY-STAT-NOTIFY-CALENDAR** appears in the status bar.

GUID	GUID-87AB0FCE-7DAF-4D8C-BF7C-B2DB57AE2AFA
Title	To create a calendar event
Changes	Valid for Nicki Label updated only in step5 No text change NO NEED REVIEW
Version	9.1.1
Author	WangHerman
Status	Draft

### To view a calendar event

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**, then tap **Calendar** [cal\_app\_label].
- 2 Tap the event you want to view.

GUID	GUID-9E9515CA-9293-43C4-B772-71B2358A39FB
Title	To view a calendar event
Changes	Valid for eDream 4.0.1 Urushi. Label updated only.
Version	6
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

### To change the calendar settings

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**, then tap **Calendar** [cal\_app\_label].
- 2 Press **ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU**, then tap **Settings** [menu\_preferences].
- 3 Tap the setting you want to change, then edit as desired.

GUID	GUID-ACA68FC1-0F37-4C04-8E1C-3F8D25930FC3
Title	To change the calendar settings
Changes	Updated from Aoba Amy and valid for all ongoing projects Condition updated only No text changes No need review
Version	8
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

## Alarm clock

Indexterm: "ringtone"  
Indexterm: "vibration"  
Indexterm: "alarm"  
Indexterm: "deleting"  
Sub-indexterm: "an alarm"

GUID	GUID-3FBC57C7-1556-440E-B522-08403A64455B
Title	Alarm clock - heading only
Changes	
Version	1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released

### About the alarm clock

Use your device as an alarm clock and select any sound in your device as your alarm signal. The alarm does not sound if your device is turned off. But it does sound when your device is set to silent mode.

GUID	GUID-F5FC671B-D26F-4394-B67B-81F3420E1693
Title	About the alarm clock
Changes	Updated from Togari and valid for all projects onwards Device term change only No other text change NO NEED REVIEW

Version	2
Author	WangHerman
Status	Draft

### To open the alarm clock

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap Alarm & clock [alarm\_clock].

GUID	GUID-BF64BBBC-7137-4E46-80C0-6B213644B50D
Title	To open the alarm clock
Changes	Updated from Aoba Amy and valid for all ongoing projects Condition updated only No text changes No need review
Version	11
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

### To set a new alarm

- 1 From your Home screen, tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap Alarm & clock [alarm\_clock].
- 3 Tap Add alarm [add\_alarm].
- 4 Tap Time [time] and adjust the time by scrolling up and down.
- 5 Tap Done [done].
- 6 If desired, edit other alarm settings.
- 7 Tap Done [done].

GUID	GUID-BBD8A2E8-E168-4C12-B44D-78D517DCC718
Title	To set a new alarm
Changes	Valid for Odin Yuga onwards Label updated only No need review
Version	13
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

### To edit an existing alarm

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap Alarm & clock [alarm\_clock].
- 3 Tap the alarm you want to edit.
- 4 Tap Time [time] and adjust the time by scrolling up and down.
- 5 Tap Done [done].
- 6 If desired, edit other alarm settings.
- 7 Tap Done [done].

- ! The alarm time format displayed is the same as the format you select for your general time settings, for example, 12-hour or 24-hour.

GUID	GUID-78B0F168-633F-486B-B279-DB3EDD413359
Title	To edit an existing alarm
Changes	Valid for Odin Yuga onwards Label updated only No need review
Version	11
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

### To deactivate an alarm

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap Alarm & clock [alarm\_clock].
- 3 Tap **ID: ICN-SONY-STAT-NOTIFY-ALARM** next to the alarm you want to deactivate.

GUID	GUID-74DB17F6-DC5D-46D9-AC0D-91D3CEB046D4
Title	To deactivate an alarm
Changes	Updated from Aoba Amy and valid for all ongoing projects Condition updated only No text changes No need review
Version	11
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

### To activate an existing alarm

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap Alarm & clock [alarm\_clock].
- 3 Tap **ID: ICN-SONY-STAT-NOTIFY-ALARM** next to the alarm you want to activate.

GUID	GUID-C8A84DE5-4042-4B27-BC9A-CBE7C9F79E25
Title	To activate an existing alarm
Changes	Updated from Aoba Amy and valid for all ongoing projects Condition updated only No text changes No need review
Version	11
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

### To delete an alarm

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap Alarm & clock [alarm\_clock].
- 3 Touch and hold the alarm you want to delete.
- 4 Tap Delete alarm [delete\_alarm], then tap Yes [gui\_yes\_txt].

GUID	GUID-80576A84-8F35-42D3-B98F-978772FBA94E
Title	To delete an alarm
Changes	Updated from Aoba Amy and valid for all ongoing projects Condition updated only No text changes No need review
Version	13
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

### To set the ringtone for an alarm

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap Alarm & clock [alarm\_clock].
- 3 Tap the alarm you want to edit.
- 4 Tap Advanced alarm settings [advanced\_alarm] and unmark the Style settings [alarm\_divider\_styling] checkbox.
- 5 Tap Alarm sound [alarm\_sound] and select an option.
- 6 Tap Done [done], then tap Done [done].


GUID	GUID-53876E40-3354-4940-9972-990B678E56A1
Title	To set the alarm signal
Changes	Updated from Aoba Amy and valid for all ongoing projects Condition updated only No text changes No need review
Version	12
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

### To set a recurring alarm

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
- 2 Find and tap Alarm & clock [alarm\_clock].
- 3 Tap the alarm you want to edit.
- 4 Tap Repeat [alarm\_repeat].
- 5 Mark the checkboxes for the desired days, then tap OK [ok].
- 6 Tap Done [done].


GUID	GUID-F16ADE60-533C-483E-ADB7-104FBC199F52
Title	To set a recurring alarm
Changes	Updated from Aoba Amy and valid for all ongoing projects Condition updated only No text changes No need review
Version	12
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

### To set the title for an alarm

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap Alarm & clock [alarm\_clock].
- 3 Tap the alarm you want to edit.
- 4 Tap Advanced alarm settings [advanced\_alarm], then tap the Alarm text [alarm\_strings\_alarm\_text\_title\_txt] field and enter a name for the alarm.
- 5 Tap Done [done].


GUID	GUID-539AE06C-CB28-436A-88B1-818209CA7788
Title	To set a title for an alarm
Changes	Updated from Aoba Amy and valid for all ongoing projects Condition updated only No text changes No need review
Version	11
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

### To activate the vibrate function for an alarm

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap Alarm & clock [alarm\_clock].
- 3 Tap the alarm you want to edit.
- 4 Tap Advanced alarm settings [advanced\_alarm], then mark the Vibrate [alarm\_vibrate] checkbox.
- 5 Tap Done [done].

GUID	GUID-303D610E-F5C8-41EC-A166-BD658B1C4370
Title	To turn on the vibration signal for an alarm
Changes	Updated from Aoba Amy and valid for all ongoing projects Condition updated only No text changes No need review
Version	12
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

### To set alarms to sound when the device is in silent mode

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap Alarm & clock [alarm\_clock], then tap to select an alarm.
- 3 Tap Advanced alarm settings [advanced\_alarm], then mark the Alarm in silent mode [alarm\_in\_silent\_mode\_title] checkbox.
- 4 Tap Done [done].

GUID	GUID-62CDB24C-9410-4CFB-8695-8DA96C9F6CD3
Title	To set the alarm in silent mode
Changes	Updated from Huashan and valid for all HTML UG Device term change only No need review
Version	8.1.4
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

### To snooze an alarm when it sounds

- Tap Snooze - min [alarm\_alert\_snooze\_min].

GUID	GUID-2B840C9B-5748-43FC-A2F5-B00D5F685BDC
Title	To turn off or snooze an alarm when it sounds
Changes	Updated from Aoba Amy and valid for all ongoing projects Condition updated only No text changes No need review
Version	7
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

### To turn off an alarm when it sounds

- Slide  ID: ICN-SONY-STAT-NOTIFY-ALARM to the right.

GUID	GUID-E3BC96CC-903A-4362-AB16-5EC1E104562C
Title	To turn off an alarm when it sounds
Changes	Updated from Aoba Amy and valid for all ongoing projects Condition updated only No text changes No need review
Version	4

<i>Author</i>	WangHerman
<i>Status</i>	Released



# Support and maintenance

Indexterm: "phone maintenance"	
Indexterm: "maintenance"	
Indexterm: "support"	
GUID	GUID-74499E7C-C777-4295-A45A-DC61658D999A
Title	Support and maintenance - heading only
Changes	
Version	1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released*

## Updating your device

Indexterm: "updating your device"	
Indexterm: "device"	
Sub-indexterm: "update"	

Update your device to the most recent software version to get optimal performance and the latest enhancements.

You can use the Update center application on your device to run a wireless update or you can use the PC Companion application on a computer to run an update using a USB cable connection. If you update wirelessly, then you can use either a mobile network or a Wi-Fi® network connection. Just make sure you back up and save all data stored on your device before you update.

- ! When you run an update using the Update center application, a data connection is established and related charges may be incurred. Also, the availability of updates over a mobile network depends on your operator. Contact your network operator for more information.




GUID	GUID-FABC28A6-48B3-4457-8068-91834B8CB1F0
Title	Updating your phone - new version
Changes	Update from Odin Yuga and valid for all projects onwards Index term updated only based on ED review No need review
Version	13
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

## Updating your device wirelessly

Use the Update center application to update your device wirelessly. You can download software updates manually, or you can allow Update service to update your device automatically whenever downloads become available. When the automatic update feature is activated, a notification appears in the status bar every time an update becomes available.

GUID	GUID-46E34C96-CD92-4DB5-BDDC-3081431482A4
Title	Updating your phone wirelessly
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	3
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

### To download software updates manually from Update center



- 1 From your Home screen, tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL** .
- 2 Find and tap **Update Center** [update\_center\_app\_name\_txt] .
- 3 Select the desired application or system update and tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-UC-DOWNLOAD**, or tap  **ID: ICN-SONY-UC-DOWNLOAD-SEVERAL** to download all application updates.

- ! Application updates launch automatically after download. With system updates, install the update manually after download, then your device will restart when the installation is finished. You may incur data connection charges when downloading updates over mobile networks.

GUID	GUID-8CCE0AB2-B9D4-415B-BB96-99406E3E97D1
Title	To download software updates manually
Changes	Updated from Togari and valid for all projects onwards Label updated and rephrased the system updates part in note



Version	8
Author	WangHerman
Status	Draft

### To activate automatic software updates using the Update Center application

- 1 From your Home screen, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL .
  - 2 Find and tap **Update Center** [update\_center\_app\_name\_txt] .
  - 3 Press  ID: ICN-SONY-KEY-MENU , then tap **Settings** [update\_center\_options\_menu\_settings\_txt] .
  - 4 Mark the **Allow automatic downloads** [automatic\_update\_settings\_title\_txt] checkbox, then tap **Agree** [agree\_label] . Updates are now downloaded automatically as soon as they become available.
- ! You may incur data connection charges when downloading updates over mobile networks.

GUID	GUID-30B859DA-2FAD-4C39-AF5E-8E857AAA68DB
Title	To download software updates automatically
Changes	Update from Odin Yuga and valid for all oning projects Removed 3G in note only
Version	9
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

### To install system updates

- 1 From your Home screen, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL .
- 2 Find and tap **Update Center** [update\_center\_app\_name\_txt] .
- 3 Select a system update you want to install, then tap  ID: ICN-SONY-UC-DOWNLOAD-READY-TO-INSTALL.

GUID	GUID-80EE363C-A662-4AC7-A280-1DD05BF77955
Title	To install system updates
Changes	Updated from Togari and valid for all projects onwards Label updated only No text change NO NEED REVIEW
Version	3
Author	WangHerman
Status	Draft

### Updating your device using a USB cable connection

Some updates are not available for wireless download. Notifications appear in the status bar to inform you of such updates. To download and run the updates, you need a USB cable and a computer running the PC Companion application. You can install PC Companion on the computer using installation files saved on your device, or you can download the application directly from *PC Companion*.

GUID	GUID-14D62035-6D62-4C0B-895B-0CCD4B30FAFD
Title	Updating your phone using a USB cable
Changes	Updated from Huashan and valid for all ongoing HTML UG Updated link only No need review
Version	8
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

### To download the PC Companion application from your device

- 1 Connect your device to a computer using a USB cable.
  - 2 When prompted, follow the instructions in your device to launch the installation of PC Companion on the computer.
- 💡 PC Companion can also be downloaded from *PC Companion*.

GUID	GUID-7ED22A2A-2675-458C-9304-FB54397D0F6B
Title	To download PC Companion application from your phone
Changes	Updated from Huashan and valid for all ongoing HTML UG Updated link only No need review
Version	4
Author	WangHerman
Status	Released

### To download software updates using a USB cable connection

- 1 Install the PC Companion application on the computer you are using, if it is not already installed.
- 2 Connect your device to the computer using a USB cable.
- 3 **Computer:** Launch the PC Companion application. After a few moments, PC Companion detects your device and searches for new software for it.
- 4 **Device:** When notifications appear in the status bar, follow the on-screen instructions to carry out the relevant software updates.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-8234E689-69C7-436B-98B8-DDCEE0DD04E8
<i>Title</i>	To download software updates using a USB cable
<i>Changes</i>	Device Term Change
<i>Version</i>	7
<i>Author</i>	WangHerman
<i>Status</i>	Released

### To update your device using an Apple® Mac® computer

- 1 Install Sony™ Bridge for Mac application on the Apple® Mac® computer you are using, if it is not already installed.
  - 2 Using a USB cable, connect your device to the Apple® Mac® computer.
  - 3 **Computer:** Launch Sony™ Bridge for Mac application. After a few moments, Sony™ Bridge for Mac application detects your device and searches for new software for it.
  - 4 **Computer:** If a new software update is detected, a popup window appears. Follow the on-screen instructions to carry out the relevant software updates.
- ! Sony™ Bridge for Mac application is downloadable from *Bridge for mac*.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-CB62B1AC-D041-4E4C-A8CF-C5E0B9675ED8
<i>Title</i>	Updating your phone using an Apple® Mac® computer
<i>Changes</i>	Updated from Huashan and valid for all ongoing HTML UG Updated link only No need review
<i>Version</i>	4
<i>Author</i>	WangHerman
<i>Status</i>	Released

## Backing up and restoring phone content

Indexterm: "backing up"  
Sub-indexterm: "content"  
Indexterm: "backing up"  
Sub-indexterm: "contacts"

Use the Backup and restore application to make backups of phone content to your memory card or to an online storage account. Such backups can be used to restore your content and some phone settings in cases where your data gets lost or deleted.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-2D47AD15-D394-4E54-AC4D-8EC7FD0C9E72
<i>Title</i>	Backing up and restoring
<i>Changes</i>	For 6.0 STE: change index content only
<i>Version</i>	5
<i>Author</i>	XuCindy
<i>Status</i>	Released

### Types of content you can back up

Use the Backup and restore application to back up the following types of data:

- Bookmarks
- Call log
- Contacts
- Applications downloaded from Google Play™
- Multimedia messages
- System settings (such as alarms, ringer volume, and language settings)

- Text messages
- ! You do not need to back up music files and photos or videos taken with the camera. They are backed up automatically to the device's memory card.
- ! You may incur additional data transmission charges when you restore applications from Google Play™.

GUID	GUID-9D77D8EF-C130-46A7-BD2E-E39C78715514
Title	Types of content you can back up
Changes	Device Term Change
Version	9
Author	MikeCao
Status	Released

## Resetting your device

GUID	GUID-DC1A8CCE-C51A-44BB-A9F7-5C0D0C3E15FA
Title	Resetting your device
Changes	New heading for HTML user guide to be used from Hushan onwards
Version	1
Author	LisaY
Status	Released

## About resetting your device

Indexterm: "resetting"

You can reset your device to its original settings, with or without deleting all of your personal data. It is possible to reset your device to the state it was in before you first turned it on. But before you perform a reset, make sure to back up any important data saved on your device.

GUID	GUID-B575DCE7-245D-4510-A1C6-20E50282D7F5
Title	About resetting your device
Changes	change "Resetting your device" to "About resetting your device" for html Userguide
Version	7.1.1
Author	LisaY
Status	Released

### To perform a factory data reset

- !** To avoid permanent damage to your device, do not restart your device while a reset procedure is underway.
- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **☰ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL**.
  - 2 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label] > **Backup & reset** [privacy\_settings] .
  - 3 Tap **Factory data reset** [master\_clear\_title] .
  - 4 If you also want to erase data such as pictures and music, which is saved to your device's internal storage, mark the **Erase internal storage** [erase\_external\_storage<product="nosdcard">] checkbox.
  - 5 Tap **Reset phone** [master\_clear\_button\_text<product="default">] .
  - 6 To confirm, tap **Erase everything** [master\_clear\_final\_button\_text] .

GUID	GUID-7AEF8CEC-825F-4962-976F-522A7D71D5FE
Title	To reset the factory data
Changes	device term change only for Huashan html userguide
Version	3
Author	LisaY
Status	Released

## Locking and protecting your device

Indexterm: "screen"  
 Sub-indexterm: "screen unlock pattern"  
 Indexterm: "PIN"  
 Indexterm: "PUK"  
 Indexterm: "SIM card"

GUID GUID-2639F9EC-B210-437E-BCCC-DC2A951FFD2D

Title	Locking and protecting your device - heading
Changes	Device term change
Version	5
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released*

## IMEI number

Every device has a unique IMEI (International Mobile Equipment Identity) number. You should keep a copy of this number. If your device is stolen, your network provider can use your IMEI number to stop the device from accessing the network in your country.

GUID	GUID-D05972EA-29A9-4C5D-B5DB-9714DD83632E
Title	IMEI number
Changes	Device term change
Version	5
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### To view your IMEI number



**ID: ILL-SONY-13NY-KRC-SS**

- Turn off your device, then remove the battery cover and battery to view your IMEI number.
- Open the phone dialer on your device and enter **\*#06#**.

GUID	GUID-0DA2A023-E45B-4D48-8205-AA78D4887688
Title	To view your IMEI number - Odin
Changes	Device term change
Version	6
Author	PengLeon
Status	Draft

### To view your IMEI number in the device

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL** .
- 2 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label] > **About phone** [about\_settings<product="default">] > **Status** [device\_status] .
- 3 Scroll to **IMEI** [status\_imei] to view the **IMEI** [status\_imei] number.

GUID	GUID-8EC38745-EBB2-49E3-BD47-B16DC4DCC17F
Title	To view your IMEI number in the phone
Changes	Device term change
Version	7
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released


## SIM card protection

Indexterm: "SIM card"  
Indexterm: "PIN"  
Indexterm: "PUK"

The SIM card lock only protects your subscription. Your device will still work with a new SIM card. If the SIM card lock is on, you have to enter a PIN (Personal Identity Number). If you enter your PIN incorrectly more times than the maximum number of attempts allowed, your SIM card will become blocked. You need to enter your PUK (Personal Unblocking Key) and then a new PIN. Your PIN, PIN2 and PUK are supplied by your network operator.


GUID	GUID-ABAFC2D8-055E-4E92-87A7-DB201A033D00
Title	SIM card protection
Changes	Device term change
Version	5
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released*

### To enable the SIM card PIN lock

- 1 From the Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL .
- 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label] > Security [security\_settings\_title] > Set up SIM/RUIM card lock [sim\_lock\_settings\_category] .
- 3 Tap Lock SIM card [sim\_enable\_sim\_lock] .
- 4 Enter the SIM card PIN and tap OK [ph\_ok] .


GUID	GUID-5356FA5C-1394-42B5-925F-6D2EF991D4D7
Title	To enable the SIM card PIN lock
Changes	Update for Tapioca DS. Add new steps and conditions for DS and icons.
Version	5
Author	Hu Pan
Status	Released

### To change the SIM card PIN

- 1 From the Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL .
- 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label] > Security [security\_settings\_title] > Set up SIM/RUIM card lock [sim\_lock\_settings\_category] .
- 3 Tap Change SIM PIN [sim\_pin\_change] .
- 4 Enter the old SIM card PIN and tap OK [ph\_ok] .
- 5 Enter the new SIM card PIN and tap OK [ph\_ok] .
- 6 Re-type the new SIM card PIN and tap OK [ph\_ok] .

GUID	GUID-66762638-590B-495A-98A3-1FB8ED5F6955
Title	To change the SIM card PIN
Changes	Update for Tapioca DS. Add steps and condition for Tapioca DS.
Version	5
Author	Hu Pan
Status	Released

### To change the SIM card PIN2

- 1 From the Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL .
- 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label] > Call settings [call\_settings\_title]
- 3 Tap Fixed dialing numbers [fdn] > Change PIN2 [change\_pin2] .
- 4 Enter the old SIM card PIN2 and tap OK [ph\_ok] .
- 5 Enter the new SIM card PIN2 and tap OK [ph\_ok] .
- 6 Confirm the new PIN2 and tap OK [ph\_ok] .

GUID	GUID-8A252C68-D2E2-4CC7-B5F0-47D151159933
Title	To change the SIM card PIN2
Changes	Update for Tapioca DS. Add steps and conditions.
Version	5
Author	Hu Pan
Status	Released

### To unlock a locked SIM card

- 1 When **Enter PUK and new PIN code**. [keyguard\_password\_enter\_puk\_code] appears, enter the PUK code.
  - 2 Enter a new PIN code and tap **OK** [ph\_ok] .
  - 3 Re-enter the new PIN code and tap **OK** [ph\_ok] .
- ! If you enter an incorrect PUK code too many times, the SIM card becomes locked. If this happens, contact your service provider to get a new SIM card.

GUID	GUID-6654AA24-3864-4B15-A219-FC7C1CC95986
Title	To unblock a locked SIM card
Changes	Add one step from Tsubasa Gina TID reviewing
Version	8
Author	PanL
Status	Released

### Setting a screen lock

There are several ways to lock your device screen. For example, you can use the Face Unlock feature, which uses a picture of your face to unlock the screen. You can also set a screen unlock pattern, a number-based PIN lock, or a text-based password.

GUID	GUID-08EC7630-FD8C-447A-BD76-199317B4BB3F
Title	Set up screen lock
Changes	Device term change
Version	3
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### To set a screen lock

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL** > **Settings** [settings\_label] > **Security** [security\_settings\_title] > **Screen lock** [unlock\_set\_unlock\_launch\_picker\_title] .
- 2 Select an option.

GUID	GUID-89E19A3B-4420-48D4-A449-6DEF928CE0C0
Title	To set a screen lock
Changes	Valid from Dogo only Tip removed according to Jorgen comments
Version	5
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### To set up the Face Unlock feature

- 1 From your **Home screen** [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt] , tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL** > **Settings** [settings\_label] > **Security** [security\_settings\_title] > **Screen lock** [unlock\_set\_unlock\_launch\_picker\_title] .
- 2 Tap **Face Unlock** [udoc\_trans\_unlock\_set\_face\_unlock] , then follow the instructions in your device to capture your face.
- 3 After your face is successfully captured, tap **Continue** [lockpassword\_continue\_label] .
- 4 Select a backup lock method and follow the instructions in the device to complete the setup.

- ! The Face Unlock feature is less secure than a screen lock pattern, PIN, or password. Someone who looks similar to you could unlock your device.
- 💡 For best results, capture your face in an indoor area that is well lit but not too bright, and hold the device at eye level.


GUID	GUID-94EBF99A-4C98-44AD-81B1-620DBDD534C5
Title	To set up the Face Unlock protection
Changes	Device term change
Version	4
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### To unlock the screen using the Face Unlock feature

- 1 Activate the screen.
  - 2 Look at your device from the same angle you used to capture your Face Unlock photo.
- 💡 If the Face Unlock feature fails to recognise your face, you need to draw the backup pattern or enter the PIN to unlock the screen.


GUID	GUID-9D3616A6-A462-45ED-BFDC-26D20002A3CB
Title	To unlock the screen using the Face Unlock feature
Changes	Device term change
Version	2
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### To disable the Face Unlock feature

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL > Settings [settings\_label] > Security [security\_settings\_title] > Screen lock [unlock\_set\_unlock\_launch\_picker\_title].
- 2 Draw your backup screen unlock pattern or enter your PIN.
- 3 Tap Swipe [unlock\_set\_unlock\_none\_title].

GUID	GUID-64709CE2-6987-4E3B-B2F2-934689181A69
Title	To disable the Face Unlock feature
Changes	Valid from Pollux (Updated according to editorial comments)
Version	4
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### To create a screen unlock pattern

- 1 From the Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap Settings [settings\_label] > Security [security\_settings\_title] > Screen lock [unlock\_set\_unlock\_launch\_picker\_title] > Pattern [unlock\_set\_unlock\_pattern\_title].
- 3 Follow the instructions in your device. You are asked to select a security question that will be used to unlock the device if you forget your screen unlock pattern.

GUID	GUID-346DE791-CADA-4BF1-A919-5CAC0817272A
Title	To create a screen unlock pattern
Changes	Device term change
Version	6
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released


### To unlock the screen using a screen unlock pattern

- 1 Activate the screen.
  - 2 Draw your screen unlock pattern.
- ! If the unlock pattern you draw on the screen is rejected five times in a row, you can select to either wait 30 seconds and then try again, or to answer the security question you have selected.

GUID	GUID-01E17F5F-AD94-4FC1-ABFD-A22C37526813
Title	To unlock the screen using a screen unlock pattern
Changes	Remove one step from Tsubasa Gina TID reviewing
Version	6
Author	PanL
Status	Released




### To change the screen unlock pattern

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Find and tap **Settings** [settings\_label] > **Security** [security\_settings\_title] > **Screen lock** [unlock\_set\_unlock\_launch\_picker\_title].
- 3 Draw your screen unlock pattern.
- 4 Tap **Pattern** [unlock\_set\_unlock\_pattern\_title].
- 5 Follow the instructions in your device.



GUID	GUID-4D9F9FE9-FB5F-4CE2-A6B2-FFEC5389E3C3
Title	To change the screen unlock pattern
Changes	Device term change
Version	7
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### To disable the screen unlock pattern

- 1 From your Home screen, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL > **Settings** [settings\_label] > **Security** [security\_settings\_title] > **Screen lock** [unlock\_set\_unlock\_launch\_picker\_title].
- 2 Draw the screen unlock pattern.
- 3 Tap **Swipe** [unlock\_set\_unlock\_none\_title].


GUID	GUID-953E76D2-861C-43EA-968C-96E2C0D6FCE7
Title	To disable the screen unlock pattern
Changes	Update for ICS function. Update the task steps.
Version	4
Author	Hu Pan
Status	Released*

### To create a screen unlock PIN

- 1 From your Home screen, tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL > **Settings** [settings\_label] > **Security** [security\_settings\_title] > **Screen lock** [unlock\_set\_unlock\_launch\_picker\_title] > **PIN** [unlock\_set\_unlock\_pin\_title].
- 2 Enter a numeric PIN.
- 3 If necessary, tap  ID: KEY-TEXT-INPUT-BACK to minimise the keyboard.
- 4 Tap **Continue** [lockpassword\_continue\_label].
- 5 Re-enter and confirm your PIN.
- 6 If necessary, tap  ID: KEY-TEXT-INPUT-BACK to minimise the keyboard.
- 7 Tap **OK** [ok].

GUID	GUID-BDD43B55-3A1E-4985-9722-9214A515C52B
Title	To create a screen unlock PIN
Changes	Valid from Odin and Yuga (Only icon changed no text updated)
Version	3
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

### To disable the screen unlock PIN

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL > **Settings** [settings\_label] > **Security** [security\_settings\_title] > **Screen lock** [unlock\_set\_unlock\_launch\_picker\_title].
- 2 Enter your PIN, then tap **Next** [next\_button\_label].
- 3 Tap **Swipe** [unlock\_set\_unlock\_none\_title].

GUID	GUID-83C4262A-3A90-400B-B579-FCA8166DA93C
Title	To disable the screen unlock PIN
Changes	Update for ICS function.
Version	2
Author	Hu Pan
Status	Released*

## To create a screen lock password

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL** > **Settings** [settings\_label] > **Security** [security\_settings\_title] > **Screen lock** [unlock\_set\_unlock\_launch\_picker\_title] > **Password** [lockscreen\_glogin\_password\_hint].
- 2 Enter a password.
- 3 If necessary, tap **ID: KEY-TEXT-INPUT-BACK** to minimise the keyboard.
- 4 Tap **Continue** [lockpassword\_continue\_label].
- 5 Re-enter and confirm your password.
- 6 If necessary, tap **ID: KEY-TEXT-INPUT-BACK** to minimise the keyboard.
- 7 Tap **OK** [ok].

GUID	GUID-CC50D2CE-E557-4CAE-AEF5-5372F02B7D39
Title	To create the screen unlock password
Changes	Valid from Odin and Yuga (only icon changed no text updated)
Version	3
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released

## To disable the screen unlock password

- 1 From your Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap **ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL** > **Settings** [settings\_label] > **Security** [security\_settings\_title] > **Screen lock** [unlock\_set\_unlock\_launch\_picker\_title].
- 2 Enter your password and tap **Continue** [lockpassword\_continue\_label].
- 3 Tap **Swipe** [unlock\_set\_unlock\_none\_title].

GUID	GUID-E2143224-2786-4FA5-9574-701F849BB063
Title	To disable the screen unlock password
Changes	Update one label comment from Tsubasa Gina TID reviewing
Version	4
Author	PanL
Status	Released*

## Support application

Indexterm: "Support application"	
GUID	GUID-7A88A756-3B21-4970-9E9F-1EC73D4277B4
Title	Help application - heading only
Changes	Software chagnes "Help" to "Support" App for Taoshan
Version	3
Author	LisaY
Status	Released

## To access the Support application

- 1 From your Application screen, find and tap **ID: ICN-SONY-APP-SUPPORT**.
- 2 Find and tap the required support item.

GUID	GUID-588EA450-00B8-46C6-892D-58CF7E2CB19B
Title	To access the Support application
Changes	Same text as version5 only capitalized S for support application
Version	7
Author	CynthiaH
Status	Released

## Recycling your phone

Indexterm: "recycling your phone"	
Got an old phone lying around the house? Why not recycle it? By doing so, you will help us reuse its materials and components, and you'll protect the environment, too! Find out more about the recycling options in your region at <a href="https://blogs.sonymobile.com/about-us/sustainability/commitment/overview/">blogs.sonymobile.com/about-us/sustainability/commitment/overview/</a> .	

GUID	GUID-D08F930B-B234-4D13-B1A2-FD4F5B866A9B
Title	Recycling your phone
Changes	For Tsubasa html User guide. Updated cross reference
Version	1.1.1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released

# Reference

GUID	GUID-0CE60553-0706-4B38-B614-3AFED70B2C2F
Title	Reference - heading only
Changes	
Version	1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released

## Settings overview

Get to know the settings in your device so that you can personalise them to your own requirements.

<b>Wi-Fi</b> <small>[wifi]</small>	Turn Wi-Fi® on or off, scan for available Wi-Fi® networks, or add a Wi-Fi® network.
<b>Bluetooth</b> <small>[bluetooth_quick_toggle_title]</small>	Turn Bluetooth™ on or off, search for available Bluetooth™ devices, and make your device visible or invisible to other Bluetooth™ devices.
<b>Data usage</b> <small>[account_settings_data_usage]</small>	Turn the mobile data traffic on or off, and keep track of your data usage details over a specified period of time.
<b>More...</b> <small>[radio_controls_title]</small>	Turn Airplane mode on or off, configure settings for VPN and mobile networks, and enable your device to share its mobile data connection as a portable Wi-Fi® hotspot, or via USB tethering or Bluetooth™ tethering. You can also enable or disable the NFC function.
<b>Call settings</b> <small>[call_settings_title]</small>	Manage and configure settings for fixed dialing numbers, voicemail and Internet calls.
<b>Sound</b> <small>[sound_settings]</small>	Configure how your device rings, vibrates, or alerts you when you receive communications. You can also use these settings to set the volume level for music, video, games or other media with audio, and to make related adjustments.
<b>Display</b> <small>[display_settings_title]</small>	Enable the screen to switch orientation when you rotate your device. You can also set the brightness, font size, wallpaper and screen timeout.
<b>Storage</b> <small>[storage_settings]</small>	Check out the available space on the internal storage and on the SD card. You can also erase the SD card, or unmount it for safe removal.
<b>Power management</b> <small>[power_settings_title]</small>	Turn the power saving modes on or off. You can also view your battery status and see how different applications consume battery power.
<b>Apps</b> <small>[applications_settings]</small>	Manage running applications, downloaded applications and applications on the SD card.
<b>Xperia™</b> <small>[sonyericsson_settings_title]</small>	Access a range of settings tailored to your Xperia device, for example, USB connection mode and Internet.
<b>Location services</b> <small>[location_settings_title]</small>	Enable or disable access to your location information.
<b>Security</b> <small>[security_settings_title]</small>	Protect your device by setting up different locks and passwords. You can also allow the installation of applications not from Google Play™.

<b>Language &amp; input</b> <small>[language_settings]</small>	Select the device language, adjust text input options and configure speech settings.
<b>Backup &amp; reset</b> <small>[privacy_settings]</small>	Back up your data and reset your device.
<b>Setup guide</b> <small>[setupguide_settings_title]</small>	Get help setting up your device.
<b>Add account</b> <small>[add_account_label]</small>	Add an account on your device, for example, an email account or a Google™ account.
<b>Date &amp; time</b> <small>[date_and_time_settings_title]</small>	Set the time and date, or choose the network-provided values. Select your preferred date and hour format.
<b>Accessibility</b> <small>[accessibility_settings]</small>	Enable your installed accessibility services and adjust related settings.
<b>Developer options</b> <small>[development_settings_title]</small>	Set options for application development. For example, you can display CPU usage on the Home screen or set your device to enter debug mode when USB connections are active.
<b>About phone</b> <small>[about_settings&lt;product="default"&gt;]</small>	View information about your device, such as the model number and signal strength. You can also update your software to the latest version.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-41CE9920-8E92-421A-873A-20C132CA49F2
<i>Title</i>	Phone settings overview
<i>Changes</i>	Update from v14. For Aoba JB. Remove "screen mirroring security and Throw settings" in Xperia. Remove "add words to the personal dictionary" in Language input.
<i>Version</i>	14.2.1
<i>Author</i>	Vera Qu
<i>Status</i>	Released

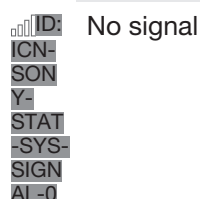
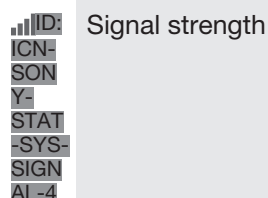
## Status and notification icons overview

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-8CCE681D-6FAB-4172-9224-6CFCEF0A966A
<i>Title</i>	Icons overview
<i>Changes</i>	Valid for eDream 6.0 (changed the title to be more specific)
<i>Version</i>	4
<i>Author</i>	PengLeon
<i>Status</i>	Released

## Status icons

Indexterm: "status"  
Indexterm: "icons"

The following status icons may appear on your screen:



R ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
STAT  
-SYS-  
DATA  
|  
CON  
NECT  
ED-  
ROA  
MING

Roaming

G ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
STAT  
-SYS-  
DATA  
|  
CON  
NECT  
ED-G

GPRS is available

E ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
STAT  
-SYS-  
DATA  
|  
CON  
NECT  
ED-E

EDGE is available

3G ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
STAT  
-SYS-  
DATA  
|  
CON  
NECT  
ED-3  
G

3G is available

G ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
STAT  
-SYS-  
DATA  
|  
FULL  
Y-  
INAN  
DOU  
T-G

Sending and downloading GPRS data

E ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
STAT  
-SYS-  
DATA  
|  
FULL  
Y-  
INAN  
DOU  
T-E

Sending and downloading EDGE data

3G ID:  
↑↓  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
STAT  
-SYS-  
DATA  
|  
FULL  
Y-  
INAN  
DOU  
T-3G

Sending and downloading 3G data

🔋 ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
STAT  
-SYS-  
BATT  
ERY-  
60

Battery status

🔌 ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
STAT  
-SYS-  
BATT  
ERY-  
CHA  
RGE-  
ANIM  
3

The battery is charging

📶 ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
STAT  
USBA  
R-  
GPS-  
ON

GPS is activated

✈️ ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
SYS-  
FLIG  
HT-  
MOD  
E

Airplane mode is activated

📶 ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
STAT  
-SYS-  
DATA  
|  
BLUE  
TOOT  
H

The Bluetooth™ function is activated


📶 ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
SYS-  
NO-  
SIM-

The SIM card is not inserted

CAR  
D

ID: The microphone is muted


ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
SYS-  
CALL  
|  
MUT  
E

ID: The speakerphone is on

ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
STAT  
-SYS-  
SPEA  
KERP  
HON  
E

ID: Silent mode

ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
SYS-  
RING  
ER-  
SILE  
NT

ID: Vibrate mode

ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
STAT  
-SYS-  
RING  
ER-  
VIBR  
ATE

ID: An alarm is set

ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
STAT  
|  
NOTI  
FY-  
ALAR  
M

ID: Synchronisation is ongoing

ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
STAT  
|  
NOTI  
FY-  
SYNC  
|  
ANIM  
O

ID: Problem with sign-in or synchronisation

ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
STAT  
|  
NOTI  
FY-  
SYNC  
|

ERRO  
R

Wi-Fi  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
STAT  
-SYS  
WIFI-  
SIGN  
AL-4

A Wi-Fi® connection is enabled and wireless networks are available

GUID	GUID-608EF053-148E-44EB-8B03-5B0E9CE88C10
Title	Status icons
Changes	Valid from Hikari (only one icon removed no text updated)
Version	10
Author	PengLeon
Status	Released*

### Notification icons

Indexterm: "notification"  
Indexterm: "icons"

The following notification icons may appear on your screen:

✉  
ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
SUPP  
ORT-  
MAIL-  
SE

New email message

📧  
ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
SYM-  
ACTI  
ON-  
SMS

New text message or multimedia message

📞  
ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
STAT  
|  
NOTI  
FY-  
VOIC  
EMAI  
L

New voicemail

📅  
ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
STAT  
|  
NOTI  
FY-  
CALE  
NDA  
R

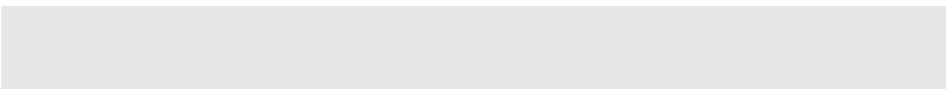
An upcoming calendar event

🎵  
ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
MUSI  
C-  
LIBR  
ARY-

A song is playing



TRAC  
KS-  
BG

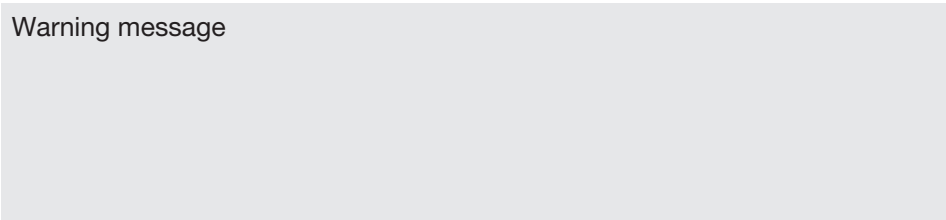


ID: The phone is connected to a computer via a USB cable

ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
STAT  
-SYS-  
TETH  
ER-  
USB

⚠ ID: Warning message

ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
STAT  
-SYS-  
WAR  
NING

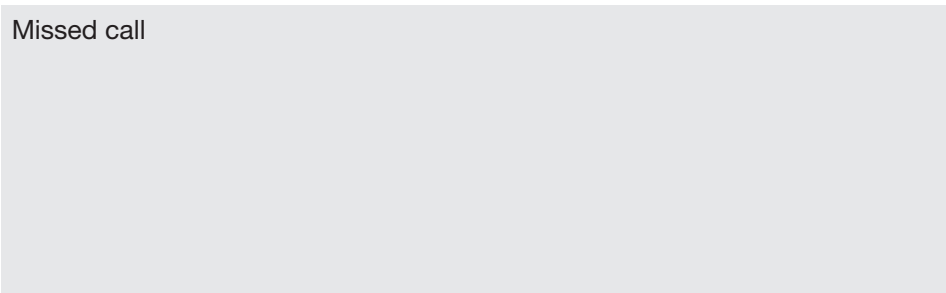


⚠ ID: Error message

ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
STAT  
-  
NOTI  
FY-  
ERRO  
R

📞 ID: Missed call

ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
STAT  
-  
NOTI  
FY-  
MISS  
ED-  
CALL

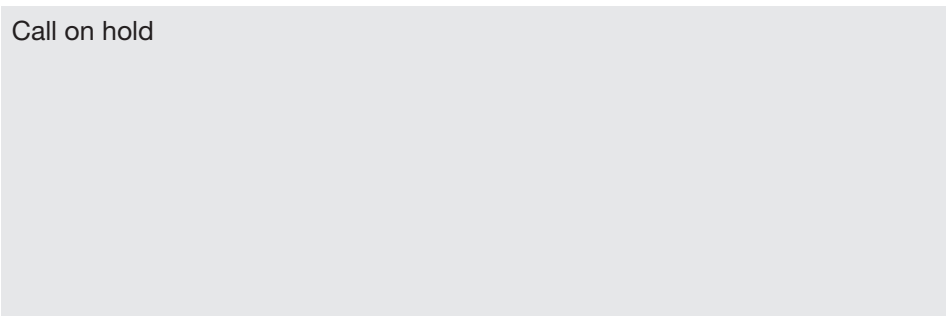


📞 ID: Call ongoing

ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
STAT  
-SYS-  
PHO  
NE-  
CALL

📞 ID: Call on hold

ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
STAT  
-SYS-  
PHO  
NE-  
CALL  
-ON-  
HOL  
D



📞 ID: Call forwarding on

ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
STAT  
-SYS-  
PHO  
NE-  
CALL  
-

FOR  
WAR  
D

⌂ ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
STAT  
-  
NOTI  
FY-  
SYNC  
-  
ANIM  
0

Software updates available

↓ ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
STAT  
-SYS-  
DOW  
NLOA  
D-  
ANIM  
4

Downloading data

↑ ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
SYS-  
UPLO  
AD

Uploading data

+ ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
STAT  
-  
NOTI  
FY-  
MOR  
E

More (undisplayed) notifications

GUID	GUID-E62A6282-5CCC-42BE-ABF4-FB624175420A
Title	Notification icons
Changes	For eDream 4.0. Remove New Instant Message icon
Version	7
Author	WangT
Status	Released*

## Application overview

Indexterm: "applications"  
Sub-indexterm: "overview"

⌂ ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
APP-  
ALAR  
M

Use the Clock application to set various kinds of alarms.

🌐 ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
APP-  
BRO  
WSE  
R

Use your web browser to navigate and view web pages, manage bookmarks, and manage text and images.

 ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
APP-  
CALC  
ULAT  
OR

Use the Calculator application to perform basic calculations.

 ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
APP-  
CALE  
NDA  
R

Use the Calendar application to keep track of your events and manage your appointments.

 ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
APP-  
CAM  
ERA

Use the camera to take photos and record video clips.

 ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
APP-  
PHO  
NEB  
OOK

Use the Contact application to manage phone numbers, email address and other information related to your contacts.

 ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
APP-  
DOW  
NLOA  
DS

Access your downloaded applications.

 ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
APP-  
EMAI  
L

Use the Email application to send and receive emails through both private and corporate accounts.

 ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
APP-  
FACE  
BOOK


Use the Facebook application to engage in social networking with friends, family members and colleagues around the world.


 ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
APP-  
RADI  
O


Browse and listen to FM radio stations.


 ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
APP-  
GALL  
ERY


Use the Gallery application to view and to work with your photos and videos.


 ID: Use the Gmail™ application in your phone to read, write and organise email messages.  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
APP-  
GMAI  
L


 ID: Search for information in your phone and on the web.  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
APP-  
GOO  
GLE-  
SEAR  
CH


 ID: Use the Latitude application to view your friends' locations on a map and share your location.  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
APP-  
LATIT  
UDE


 ID: View your current location, find other locations, and calculate routes using Google Maps™.  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
APP-  
GOO  
GLE-  
MAP  
S

 ID: Go to Google Play™ to download free and paid applications for your phone.  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
APP-  
MAR  
KET-  
PLAC  
E

 ID: Use the Messaging application to send and receive text and multimedia messages.  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
APP-  
MES  
SAGI  
NG

 ID: Use the WALKMAN application to organise and play music, audio books and podcasts.  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
APP-  
MUSI  
C-  
PLAY  
ER

 ID: View the updates of music and videos that your friends have shared on Facebook.  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
APP-  
MUSI  
C-  
VIDE  
OS

 ID: Navigate your way using spoken, turn-by-turn instructions.  
ICN-  
SON


Y-  
APP-  
NAVI  
GATI  
ON

 ID: View news stories and weather forecasts.


ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
APP-  
WEA  
THER

 ID: Make phone calls by dialling the number manually.


ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
APP-  
DIAL  
ER

 ID: Search for places, for example, restaurants and cafés.

ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
APP-  
PLAC  
ES

 ID: Optimise phone settings to suit your own requirements.


ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
APP-  
SETTI  
NGS

 ID: Use the Setup guide application to learn about basic functions and to get help setting up the phone.


ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
APP-  
SETU  
P-  
GUID  
E

 ID: Use the Google Talk™ application to chat with friends online.


ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
APP-  
GOO  
GLE-  
TALK

 ID: Identify music tracks that you hear playing in your surroundings, and get artist, album and other info.

ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
APP-  
TRAC  
K-ID

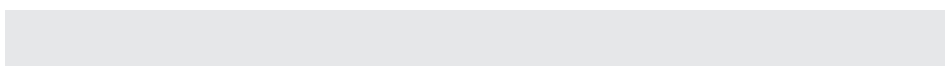
 ID: Use the Help application to access user support directly in the phone. For example, you can access a User guide, troubleshooting information, plus tips and tricks.

ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
APP-  
SUPP  
ORT

 ID: Use YouTube™ to share and view videos from around the world.

ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
APP-

YOUT  
UBE



🌐ID:  
ICN-  
SON  
Y-  
APP-  
UPDA  
TE-  
CENT  
ER

Download and install new applications and updates.

! Some applications are not supported by all networks and/or service providers in all areas.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-C91B8D79-CD60-4158-9600-63B728C514EB
<i>Title</i>	Applications overview
<i>Changes</i>	Changed from TapiocaSSand JLO removed some apps that not preload in phone
<i>Version</i>	26
<i>Author</i>	CynthiaH
<i>Status</i>	Released*

## Important information


GUID	GUID-649D6144-4BB8-4D37-8311-A6303D21E672
Title	Important information - heading only
Changes	
Version	1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released

### Important information leaflet

Before you use your device, please read the *Important information* leaflet provided in the Setup guide in your device or in the box.

GUID	GUID-4EB461AA-46A2-4B40-A84B-BFF5E93028AF
Title	Important information leaflet
Changes	
Version	1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released*

### To access the setup guide manually

- 1 From the Home screen [homescreen\_strings\_application\_name\_txt], tap  ID: ICN-SONY-HOME-APPTRAY-NORMAL.
- 2 Tap Settings [settings\_label] > Setup guide [setupguide\_settings\_title].

GUID	GUID-45BAC9AF-99A4-4D6C-979B-E6E88255911E
Title	To access the setup guide manually
Changes	For Jelly Bean projects. Steps changed.
Version	7
Author	QianWang
Status	Released

### Limitations to services and features

- ! Some of the services and features described in this User guide are not supported in all countries/regions or by all networks and/or service providers in all areas. Without limitation, this applies to the GSM International Emergency Number, 112. Please contact your network operator or service provider to determine availability of any specific service or feature and whether additional access or usage fees apply.

Use of certain features and applications described in this guide may require access to the Internet. You may incur data connection charges when you connect to the Internet from your phone. Contact your wireless service provider for more information.

GUID	GUID-2871DC0F-1733-400C-A0A4-6AEC258F6444
Title	Limitations to services and features
Changes	
Version	1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released*

### Legal information

GUID	GUID-1A9D3F04-6F50-46B0-98ED-788E34A611F3
Title	Legal information - heading
Changes	Generic
Version	1
Author	JorgenL
Status	Released

## Sony [Emptylabel] / [Emptylabel] [Empty label]

This User guide is published by Sony Mobile Communications AB or its local affiliated company, without any warranty. Improvements and changes to this User guide necessitated by typographical errors, inaccuracies of current information, or improvements to programs and/or equipment, may be made by Sony Mobile Communications AB at any time and without notice. Such changes will, however, be incorporated into new editions of this User guide.

©Sony Mobile Communications AB, 2012.

All rights reserved.

Your mobile phone has the capability to download, store and forward additional content, for example, ringtones. The use of such content may be restricted or prohibited by rights of third parties, including but not limited to restriction under applicable copyright laws. You, and not Sony, are entirely responsible for additional content that you download to or forward from your mobile phone. Prior to your use of any additional content, please verify that your intended use is properly licensed or is otherwise authorized. Sony does not guarantee the accuracy, integrity or quality of any additional content or any other third party content. Under no circumstances will Sony be liable in any way for your improper use of additional content or other third party content.

This User guide may reference services or applications provided by third parties. Use of such programming or services may require separate registration with the third party provider and may be subject to additional terms of use. For applications accessed on or through a third-party website, please review such websites' terms of use and applicable privacy policy in advance. Sony does not warrant or guarantee the availability or performance of any third-party websites or offered services.

Remove the battery to see regulatory information such as the CE mark.

All product and company names mentioned herein are the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners. Any rights not expressly granted herein are reserved. All other trademarks are property of their respective owners.

Visit [www.sonymobile.com](http://www.sonymobile.com) for more information.

All illustrations are for illustration purposes only and may not accurately depict the actual phone.

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.

Content owners use Windows Media digital rights management technology (WMDRM) to protect their intellectual property, including copyrights. This device uses WMDRM software to access WMDRM-protected content. If the WMDRM software fails to protect the content, content owners may ask Microsoft to revoke the software's ability to use WMDRM to play or copy protected content. Revocation does not affect unprotected content. When you download licenses for protected content, you agree that Microsoft may include a revocation list with the licenses. Content owners may require you to upgrade WMDRM to access their content. If you decline an upgrade, you will not be able to access content that requires the upgrade.

This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 visual and AVC patent portfolio licenses for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer for (i) encoding video in compliance with the MPEG-4 visual standard ("MPEG-4 video") or the AVC standard ("AVC video") and/or (ii) decoding MPEG-4 or AVC video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and non-commercial activity and/or was obtained from a video provider licensed by MPEG LA to provide MPEG-4 and/or AVC video. No license is granted or shall be implied for any other use. Additional information including that relating to promotional, internal and commercial uses and licensing may be obtained from MPEG LA, L.L.C. See <http://www.mpegla.com>. MPEG Layer-3 audio decoding technology licensed from Fraunhofer IIS and Thomson.

<i>GUID</i>	GUID-BA620967-57C4-482B-9882-A32947F9CFB9
<i>Title</i>	Legal text - html User guide - Tsubasa
<i>Changes</i>	Part number is removed
<i>Version</i>	1
<i>Author</i>	JorgenL
<i>Status</i>	Released*



# Index

- .....135
- A**
- accounts .....14
  - Exchange Active Sync® .....14
  - Facebook™ .....14
  - Google™ .....14
- adjusting volume .....104
- Airplane mode .....53
- alarm .....204
- Album .....141, 142, 143
  - map .....153
  - My albums .....144
  - online albums .....155
  - opening .....141
  - pictures .....142
  - SensMe™ slideshow .....147
  - thumbnail size .....143
  - viewing .....142, 144, 153, 155
  - viewing local content .....142
- analysing
  - photos .....150
- Android Market™ - See Google Play™ .....62
- Android™ .....8
- animated wallpaper .....30
- answering service .....71
- applications
  - arranging .....35
  - overview .....226
  - screen .....31
  - sorting .....35
- audio .....109
  - adjusting volume .....104
  - playing .....103
  - playing tracks in random order .....109
- audio content
  - related content .....106
- B**
- back cover
  - attaching .....11
  - removing .....10
- backing up
  - contacts .....86, 211
  - content .....211
- battery .....17
- Bluetooth™ wireless technology .....183
- brightness .....51
- business cards
  - sending .....86
- C**
- calendar .....203
  - create an event .....203
- calls .....66, 75
  - barring .....70
  - diverting .....70, 74
  - emergency .....66
  - forwarding .....74
  - log .....70
  - missed .....70
  - multiple .....72
  - reject .....69
  - settings .....74
  - waiting .....72
- camera .....121, 125, 126, 135
  - closing .....122
  - controls .....121
  - face detection .....124
  - geotagging .....125
  - icons .....135
  - overview .....121
  - recording videos .....133, 134
  - screen .....121
  - self-portraits .....123
  - settings .....126, 127, 134, 135
  - smile detection .....125
  - Smile Shutter™ .....125
  - taking photos .....122, 124, 125
  - using the flash .....123
  - video .....133
  - viewing photos .....123
  - viewing videos .....134
  - zoom .....123
- caps lock .....39
- charging .....17
- chat .....92
- conference calls .....73
- connectivity .....168
- contacts .....77
  - backing up .....86
  - copying .....86
  - favourite .....84
  - groups .....85
  - importing from SIM card .....79
  - joining contact information .....83
  - picture .....81
  - sending .....85
  - sharing .....85
  - transferring .....77, 78, 79, 80
- corporate email, calendar and contacts .....197
- cropping
  - photos .....147, 148
- D**
- data traffic .....58
- date
  - format .....50
- deleting .....105
  - an alarm .....204
  - music .....114
  - photos .....150
  - tracks .....105
  - videos .....152
- device
  - battery .....18
  - performance .....18
  - update .....209
- download
  - Internet settings .....56
- driving directions .....202
- E**
- editing
  - faces .....150
  - photos .....148
- email .....94
  - more than one account .....94
- emergency numbers .....66
- equaliser .....104, 105
- events
  - calendar .....203
- extensions .....26
- F**
- face detection .....124

Facebook™		marking options .....	21
"Like" a track on Facebook™ .....	106	Media Go™ .....	190
synchronisation .....	198	messages	
Xperia™ with Facebook .....	198	settings .....	56
faces		micro SIM card	
editing .....	150	inserting .....	11
favourites		Microsoft® Exchange synchronisation .....	197
removing radio channels as .....	118	movies .....	157
saving radio channels as .....	118	clearing video information .....	159
fixed dialling .....	75	Movies .....	157
flash		Multimedia Messaging Service (MMS)	
using when taking photos .....	123	settings .....	56
Flight mode - See Airplane mode .....	53	music .....	55, 102, 111
FM radio		adjusting volume .....	104
favourites .....	118	changing tracks .....	103
selecting a channel .....	116	deleting .....	114
front camera .....	121	downloading music information .....	108
<b>G</b>		hearing protection .....	111
geotagging		My playlists .....	110
of photos .....	125	pausing a track .....	104
gesture input .....	43	playing .....	103
Gmail™ .....	95	purchasing .....	113
Google Latitude™ .....	201	recommending .....	114
Google Maps™ .....	201	searching using TrackID™ .....	112
Google Play™ .....	62	sending .....	106
Google Talk™ .....	92	sharing .....	114
Google™ account setup .....	96	shortcuts .....	108
Google™ synchronisation .....	196	transferring to your device .....	103
GPS .....	200	transferring to/from a computer .....	103
<b>H</b>		using a headset .....	55
headset .....	55	viewing artist info .....	114
using .....	55	My music .....	107
Home screen .....	26	<b>N</b>	
customising .....	28	Navigation application .....	202
<b>I</b>		notification .....	224
icons .....	220, 224	light .....	36
in the camera .....	135	panel .....	36, 38
importing SIM contacts .....	79	ringtone .....	50
infinite button .....	106, 107	setting .....	38
instant messaging .....	92	<b>O</b>	
Internet		on-screen keyboard .....	39
settings .....	56	overview .....	107
web browser .....	167	<b>P</b>	
<b>K</b>		pausing a track .....	104
keyboard .....	39	personal information .....	77
settings .....	46	phone maintenance .....	209
keys .....	16	Phonepad .....	39, 44
<b>L</b>		photo albums	
language .....	52	viewing .....	141
writing .....	46	photos .....	149
Latitude .....	201	adding a geotag .....	149
LCD backlight control .....	51	adding the geographical position .....	125
"Like" a photo on Facebook™ .....	156	analysing .....	150
"Like" a track on Facebook™ .....	106	associating with a contact .....	81
"Like" a video on Facebook™ .....	156	cropping .....	147, 148
live wallpaper .....	30	deleting .....	150
location .....	126, 200	editing .....	148
locations .....	200	photo viewer .....	142
locks		rotating .....	147
activating the screen .....	13	saturation level .....	149
locking the screen .....	13	selecting .....	143
screen lock .....	13	SensMe™ slideshow .....	147
<b>M</b>		sharing .....	149
maintenance .....	209	slideshow .....	146
maps .....	200	taking .....	122, 123, 124, 125
Maps .....	201	transferring to/from a computer .....	103
		using as .....	147
		viewing .....	123, 141, 142, 143
		viewing on a map .....	152

viewing same location .....	126	camera .....	126, 135
zooming .....	146	data usage .....	58
PIN .....	212, 214	Internet .....	56
playing		messaging .....	56
music .....	103	MMS .....	56
playlists .....	109	quick settings .....	36
adding a track .....	110	still camera .....	126
creating .....	110	video camera .....	134
deleting .....	111	setup guide .....	13
playing your own .....	110	sharing	
removing tracks .....	110	music .....	114
powering off .....	12	photos .....	149
powering on .....	12	shuffle music .....	109
presets		silent mode .....	48
removing radio channels as .....	118	SIM card .....	212, 214
saving radio channels as .....	118	exporting contacts to .....	87
protective plastic sheet .....	21	importing contacts from .....	79
PUK .....	212, 214	slideshow .....	146
purchasing		Smart Connect .....	194
music .....	113	smile detection .....	125
<b>R</b>		Smile Shutter™ .....	125
radio .....	116, 117	SOS - See emergency numbers .....	66
favourites .....	118	STAMINA mode	
listening to with the speaker .....	119	changing settings .....	19
mono sound .....	119	standby time	
moving between channels .....	116	estimating .....	20
opening .....	116	status .....	220
radio region .....	116	bar .....	36
searching for channels .....	118	still camera .....	121, 122, 127
selecting a channel .....	116	settings .....	126
stereo sound .....	119	support .....	209
visualiser .....	117	Support application .....	218
radio sound .....	119	surround sound feature .....	105
receiving items using Bluetooth™ .....	185	symbols .....	39
recently used applications window .....	32	synchronising .....	196
recommending music .....	106, 114	Facebook™ contacts, calendar, photos .....	198
recommending photos and videos .....	156	Google™ contacts, calendar, email .....	196
recording videos .....	121	with Microsoft® Exchange .....	197
using the camera key .....	133	<b>T</b>	
recycling your phone .....	218	taking photos .....	121
resetting .....	212	by tapping .....	122
resizing		self-portraits .....	123
photos .....	147, 148	using face detection .....	124
ringtone .....	204	using smile detection .....	125
rotating		using Smile Shutter™ .....	125
photos .....	147	using the camera key .....	122
<b>S</b>		telephony - See calls .....	66
scanning barcodes .....	191	tethering	
screen .....	51	USB tethering .....	172
cracked .....	21	with Xperia Link™ .....	172
glass .....	21	text input method .....	39
screen unlock pattern .....	212	themes .....	30
warranty .....	21	time .....	50
searching		time management .....	203
music using TrackID™ .....	112	TrackID™ technology .....	112
track information .....	112	buying a track .....	113
self-portrait .....	121	deleting a track .....	114
sending		opening .....	112
business cards .....	86	recommending a track .....	114
contacts .....	85	searching for track information .....	112
music .....	106	sharing a track .....	114
sending items using Bluetooth™ .....	185	using results .....	113
SensMe™ channels .....	108, 109	using with the FM Radio .....	120
services .....	14	viewing artist info .....	114
setting		viewing charts .....	113
light amount .....	148	transferring	
photos .....	149	contacts .....	77, 78, 79, 80
settings		turning off .....	12
call .....	74	turning on .....	12

<b>U</b>	
updating your device .....	209
USB connection .....	187
using Movies .....	158
using the equaliser .....	104
<b>V</b>	
vibration .....	50, 204
video albums	
viewing .....	141
video camera .....	121, 133
recording videos .....	134
settings .....	135
video player	
pausing a video .....	151
Video Unlimited .....	161
buying videos .....	163
creating an account .....	163
menu overview .....	161, 165
notifications .....	163
renting videos .....	163
watching a video .....	165
videos .....	151
adjusting volume .....	152
deleting .....	152
fast forwarding and rewinding .....	151
pausing .....	151
playing .....	151
recording .....	133, 134
selecting .....	143
sending .....	152
sharing .....	152
transferring to/from a computer .....	103
viewing .....	134, 141, 142, 143
viewing	
movies .....	157
Movies .....	157
photos .....	123
videos recorded using the camera .....	134
voice input .....	47
voice recognition .....	47
voicemail .....	71
volume	
adjusting video .....	152
key .....	48
<b>W</b>	
"WALKMAN" application	
adding tracks to playlists .....	110
creating playlists .....	110
deleting tracks .....	105
minimising .....	105
overview .....	102
playing tracks in random order .....	109
playlists .....	109
using .....	103
using the equaliser .....	104, 105
"WALKMAN" application widget .....	111
wallpaper .....	30
web browser .....	167
Wi-Fi® .....	171
widgets .....	27
resizing .....	28
wireless networks .....	200
<b>Z</b>	
zoom .....	123
zooming	
photos .....	146